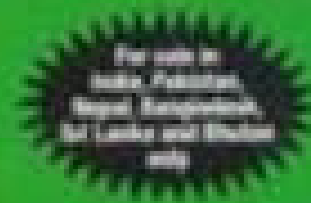


# ENGLISH CONVERSIONS PRACTICE

THIRD EDITION



GRANT TAYLOR



# 1. MEETING / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

S1. Hello. How are you?  
S2. Pretty well, thanks. And you?  
S1. I'm fine, thanks.  
S2. It's good to see you again.

## *Conversation B*

S1. Where have you been lately?  
S2. I've been busy with extra work.  
S1. I've had a lot of work to do too.  
S2. Yes. I haven't seen you for quite a while either.

## *Conversation C*

S1. Hello. How's everything?  
S2. Fine, thanks. How about you?  
S1. Just fine. What's new?  
S2. Nothing much.

## *Conversation D*

S1. I'm pleased to meet you.  
S2. The pleasure is mine.  
S1. I've heard John speak about you often.  
S2. Only good things, I hope.

## *Conversation E*

S1. Look who's here!  
S2. Are you surprised to see me?  
S1. Sure. I thought you were in Europe.  
S2. I was, but I got back yesterday.

## *Exercise 1/ Line A4 /*

It's good to see you again.

nice  
wonderful  
delightful  
marvelous  
exciting

It's nice to see you again.  
It's wonderful to see you again.  
It's delightful to see you again.  
It's marvelous to see you again.  
It's exciting to see you again.

## *Exercise 2/ Line A4 /*

It's good to see you again.

meet you  
talk to you  
be with you  
hear from you  
have a conversation with you

It's good to meet you again.  
It's good to talk to you again.  
It's good to be with you again.  
It's good to hear from you again  
It's good to have a conversation with you again.

**Exercise 3/ Line A4 /**

It's good to see you again.

Them  
all of you  
everyone  
John and her  
Mary and him

It's good to see them again.  
It's good to see all of you again.  
It's good to see everyone again.  
It's good to see John and her again.  
It's good to see Mary and him again.

**Exercise 4/ Line A4 /**

It's good to see you again.

Today  
this week  
during our vacation  
so soon again  
after such a long time

It's good to see you again today.  
It's good to see you again this week.  
It's good to see you again during our vacation.  
It's good to see you so soon again.  
It's good to see you after such a long time.

**Exercise 5 / Line A4 /**

It's good to see you again.

wonderful  
meet  
all of you  
so soon again  
be with all of you

It's wonderful to see you again.  
It's wonderful to meet you again.  
It's wonderful to meet all of you again.  
It's wonderful to meet all of you so soon again.  
It's wonderful to be with all of you so soon again.

**Exercise 6 / Line B1 /**

Where have you been lately?

recently  
since June  
this past week  
for the last month  
since school finished

Where have you been recently?  
Where have you been since June?  
Where have you been this past week?  
Where have you been for the last month?  
Where have you been since school finished?

**Exercise 7 / Line B1 /**

Where have you been lately?

John  
all of you  
your friend Mary  
John and you  
everyone

Where has John been lately?  
Where have all of you been lately?  
Where has your friend Mary been lately?  
Where have John and you been lately?  
Where has everyone been lately?

**Exercise 8 / Line B1 /**

**Where have you been lately?**

recently  
all of you  
since last July  
that student  
this past week

**Where have you been recently?  
Where have all of you been recently?  
Where have all of you been since last July?  
Where has that student been since last July?  
Where has that student been this past week?**

**Exercise 9 / Line B2 /**

**I've been busy, with extra work.**

tied up  
with business  
We  
completely involved

**I've been tied up with extra work  
I've been tied up with business  
We've been tied up with business  
We've been completely involved**

**Exercise 10 / Line B3 /**

**I've had a lot of work to do too.**

A great deal  
Finish  
also  
too much  
take care of

**I've had a great deal of work to do too.  
I've had a great deal of work to finish too  
I've had a great deal of work to finish also  
I've had too much work to finish also.  
I've had too much work to take care of also**

**Exercise 11 / Line B4 /**

**I haven't seen you.**

for quite a while  
heard from you  
She  
Either

**I haven't seen you for quite a while.  
I haven't heard from you for quite a while  
She hasn't heard from you for quite a while  
She hasn't heard from you for quite a while either.**

**Exercise 12 / Line D1 /**

**I'm pleased to meet you.**

Delighted  
to make your acquaintance  
happy  
so soon  
to have the pleasure of  
meeting you

**I'm delighted to meet you.  
I'm delighted to make your acquaintance  
I'm happy to make your acquaintance  
I'm happy to make your acquaintance so soon.  
I'm happy to have the pleasure of  
meeting you so soon.**

**Exercise 13 / Line D3 /**

**John speaks about you.  
John mentions you.  
John refers to you.  
John describes you.  
John inquires about you.**

**I've heard him speak about you.  
I've heard him mention you.  
I've heard him refer to you.  
I've heard him describe you.  
I've heard him inquire about you.**

John compliments you.

I've heard him compliment you.

*Exercise 14 / Line E3 /*

I thought you were in Europe.  
the city  
at Sandy Beach  
school  
the office  
on the train to New York

I thought you were in the city  
I thought you were at Sandy Beach  
I thought you were at school  
I thought you were at the office  
I thought you were on the train to New York.

*Exercise 15/ Line E4 /*

I got back yesterday.

two days ago  
returned  
last Thursday  
I flew home  
on Friday

I got back two days ago.  
I returned two days ago.  
I returned last Thursday.  
I flew home last Thursday.  
I flew home on Friday.

## 2. PARTING / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

S1. Well, I have an appointment now.  
S2. I'm in quite a hurry too.  
S1. Good to see you. Goodbye.,  
S2. Goodbye. Take care of yourself.

### Conversation B

S1. I guess I'd better go now.  
S2. I've got to be going now too.  
S1. In that case, I'll be seeing you.  
S2. So long. See you later.

### Conversation C

S1. It's getting late, and I have to go now.  
S2. We're sorry you have to leave.  
S1. Please excuse me, won't you?  
S2. Certainly. Come back soon.

### Conversation D

S1. I'm glad to have met you.  
S2. Thank you. It was nice to have seen you.  
S1. I hope we can get together again.  
S2. Yes. I'll be looking forward to it.

### Conversation E

S1. I think I have to leave now.  
S2. Must you go so soon?  
S3. I'm afraid I really have to.  
S4. Well, it was fun to get together again.

### Exercise 1 / Line A1 /

I have an appointment now.

meeting  
date  
engagement  
class

I have a meeting now.  
I have a date now.  
I have an engagement now.  
I have a class now.

### Exercise 2 / Line A1 /

I have an appointment now.

soon  
very shortly  
in a few minutes  
an hour from now

I have an appointment soon.  
I have an appointment very shortly.  
I have an appointment in a few minutes.  
I have an appointment an hour from now.

**this evening**

**I have an appointment this evening.**

**Exercise 3 / Line A1 /**

**I have an appointment now.**

**meeting  
soon  
engagement  
very shortly  
date**

**I have a meeting now.  
I have a meeting soon.  
I have an engagement soon.  
I have an engagement very shortly.  
I have a date very shortly.**

**Exercise 4 / Line B1 /**

**I guess I'd better go now.**

**right away  
very soon  
right now  
in a minute or two**

**I guess I'd better go right away.  
I guess I'd better go very soon.  
I guess I'd better go right now.  
I guess I'd better go in a minute or two.**

**Exercise 5 / Lines B1 and E1 /**

**I think I'd better go now.**

**I should  
I ought to  
I have to  
I've got to  
I must**

**I think I should go now.  
I think I ought to go now.  
I think I have to go now.  
I think I've got to go now.  
I think I must go now.**

**Exercise 6 / Line B1 /**

**I guess I'd better go now.**

**think  
I ought to .  
leave  
right away  
should  
quite soon**

**I think I'd better go now.  
I think I ought to go now.  
I think I ought to leave now.  
I think I ought to leave right away.  
I think I should leave right away.  
I think I should leave quite soon.**

**Exercise 7 / Line C1 /**

**It's getting late.**

**Dark  
Outside  
much colder  
It's been getting  
Cloudier  
a lot**

**It's getting dark.  
It's getting dark outside.  
It's getting much colder outside.  
It's been getting much colder outside  
It's been getting much cloudier outside.  
It's been getting a lot cloudier outside.**

**Exercise 8 / Line C1 /**

**I have to go now.**

**quite soon  
must  
leave  
in a few minutes  
I've got to  
Return**

**I have to go quite soon  
I must go quite soon  
I must leave quite soon  
I must leave in a few minutes  
I've got to leave in a few minutes  
I've got to return in a few minutes**

**Exercise 9 / Line E4 /**

**It was fun to get together again.**

**exciting  
meet each other  
once more  
talk to each other  
pleasant**

**It was exciting to get together again.  
It was exciting to meet each other again.  
It was exciting to meet each other once more.  
It was exciting to talk to each other once more.  
It was pleasant to talk to each other once more.**

# 3. DO YOU SPEAK ENGLISH?/ CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

- S1. Do you speak English?
- S2. Only a little, and not very well.
- S3. Do you know many words?
- S4. No, I don't. Only the important words.

## Conversation B

- S1. Does your brother speak English?
- S2. Well, he speaks a little English.
- S1. Do your sisters speak English?
- S2. Yes, they do. They speak it very well.

## Conversation C

- S1. Can I help you?
- S2. Yes. I speak only French.
- S1. I'm sorry, but I don't understand French.
- S2. Please find someone who speaks French.

## Conversation D

- S1. What's the matter?
- S2. I don't speak English.
- S3. Do you need some kind of help?
- S4. Yes, but I can't explain it in English.

## Conversation E

- S1. Do you think English is easy?
- S2. No, I don't.
- S1. Why don't you think so?
- S2. Because I don't understand it.

### *Exercise 1 / Lines A1 and B1 /*

Do you speak English?

your brother  
your sisters  
Mr. Brown  
the lawyers  
the girl

Does your brother speak English?  
Do your sisters speak English?  
Does Mr. Brown speak English?  
Do the lawyers speak English?  
Does the girl speak English?

### *Exercise 2 / Lines A1 and B1 /*

**Do you speak English?**

**Greek  
Spanish  
Italian  
Portuguese**

**Do you speak Greek?  
Do you speak Spanish?  
Do you speak Italian?  
Do you speak Portuguese?**

***Exercise 3 / Lines A1 and B4 /***

**Do you speak English?**

**fluently  
rapidly  
very well  
correctly**

**Do you speak English fluently?  
Do you speak English rapidly?  
Do you speak English very well?  
Do you speak English correctly?**

***Exercise 4 / Lines A1, B1, B4 /***

**Do you speak English?**

**Japanese  
your brother  
fluently  
Greek  
your sisters**

**Do you speak Japanese?  
Does your brother speak Japanese?  
Does your brother speak Japanese fluently?  
Does your brother speak Greek fluently?  
Do your sisters speak Greek fluently?**

***Exercise 5 / Line C1 /***

**Can I help you?**

**any of you  
We  
Assist  
with anything  
you two**

**Can I help any of you?  
Can we help any of you?  
Can we assist any of you?  
Can we assist any of you with anything?  
Can we assist you two with anything?**

***Exercise 6 / Line C4 /***

**Please find someone who speaks French.**

**get  
bring  
ask for  
direct me to  
take me to**

**Please get someone who speaks French.  
Please bring someone who speaks French.  
Please ask for someone who speaks French.  
Please direct me to someone who speaks French.  
Please take me to someone who speaks French.**

***Exercise 7 / Line C4 /***

**Please find someone who speaks French.**

**German  
Turkish  
Arabic  
Chinese**

**Please find someone who speaks German.  
Please find someone who speaks Turkish.  
Please find someone who speaks Arabic.  
Please find someone who speaks Chinese.**

***Exercise 8 / Line C4 /***

**Please find someone who speaks French.**

**bring  
Arabic  
ask for  
German  
take me to**

**Please bring someone who speaks French.  
Please bring someone who speaks Arabic.  
Please ask for someone who speaks Arabic.  
Please ask for someone who speaks German.  
Please take me to someone who speaks German.**

***Exercise 9 / Line E1 /***

**Do you think English is easy?**

**hard  
difficult  
simple  
complicated**

**Do you think English is hard?  
Do you think English is difficult?  
Do you think English is simple?  
Do you think English is complicated?**

***Exercise 10 / Line D2 /***

**I don't speak English.**

**The man  
fluently  
The boys  
very well  
understand**

**The man doesn't speak English.  
The man doesn't speak English fluently.  
The boys don't speak English fluently.  
The boys don't speak English very well.  
The boys don't understand English very well.**

# 4. DAILY ACTIVITIES / CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

- S1. What time do you get up? ,  
S2. I get up about seven fifteen.  
S1. What time is breakfast at your house?  
S2. Breakfast is always at a quarter to eight.

## Conversation B

- S1. What do you usually do in the afternoon?  
S2. We usually study or read.  
S1. What do you generally do over the weekend?  
S2. We generally enjoy sports and visit friends.

## Conversation C

- S1. Do you ever go to museums?  
S2. I go every now and then.  
S1. What kinds of things do you like to see?  
S2. I enjoy seeing statues and old paintings.

## Conversation D

- S1. Do you watch television very often?  
S2. Well, I sometimes watch it in the evening.  
S1. Did you watch television last night?  
S2. Yes, I did. I saw several good programs.

## Conversation E

- S1. Do you ever listen to the radio?  
S2. Certainly. In fact, I listen practically every night.  
S1. What's your favorite program?  
S2. I like the Eleven O'clock Theater best of all.

## Exercise 1 / Line A1 /

What time do you get up?

have breakfast  
leave home  
leave for work  
return home  
go to bed

What time do you have breakfast?  
What time do you leave home?  
What time do you leave for work?  
What time do you return home?  
What time do you go to bed?

## Exercise-2 / Lines A1 and A2 /

I get up at seven fifteen.                      What time do you get up?  
I have breakfast about eight fifteen.      What time do you have breakfast?

I leave home at a quarter to nine.  
I go to bed about eleven o'clock.

What time do you leave home?  
What time do you go for bed?

**Exercise 3 / Lines A1 and A3 /**

What time do you have breakfast?  
What time do you go to school?  
What time do you get to the office?  
What time do you eat lunch?  
What time do you leave for home?

When do you have breakfast?  
When do you go to school?  
When do you get to the office?  
When do you eat lunch?  
When do you leave for home?

**Exercise 4 / Line D1 /**

Do you watch television very often?  
How often do you watch television?  
Does John watch television very often?  
How often does John watch television?  
Do the boys watch television very often?  
How often do the boys watch television?

Yes, I do.  
I watch it twice a week  
Yes, he does.  
He watches it twice a week.  
Yes, they do.  
They watch it twice a week.

**Exercise 5 / Line D3**

Did you watch television last night?  
Did you listen to the radio last  
Did you go to a movie last night?  
Did you go to the library last night?  
Did you attend a concert last night?  
Did you visit a museum last night?

Yes, I did. I watched television last night.  
Yes, I did. I listened to the radio last night.  
Yes, I did. I went to a movie last night.  
Yes, I did. I went to the library last  
Yes, I did. I attended concert last  
Yes, I did. I visited a museum last

**Exercise 6 / Line A4 /**

He's happy.  
They're at home.  
She's there.  
I'm very nervous.  
You're in your office.  
They're quite busy.  
We're serious about things.

He's usually happy  
They're usually at home  
She's usually there.  
I'm usually very nervous  
You're usually in your Office.  
They're usually quite busy.  
We're usually serious about things.

**Exercise 7 / Lines B2 and B4 /**

He writes carefully.  
They practice at home.  
She reads popular novels.  
I watch television here.  
He enjoys seeing movies.  
They leave home early.  
We get up before eight.

He usually writes carefully.  
They usually practice at home.  
She usually reads popular novels.  
I usually watch television here.  
He usually enjoys seeing movies.  
They usually leave home early.  
We usually get up before eight.

**Exercise 8 / Lines A4 and B2 /**

He's kind to them.  
They help her.  
We're busy on Friday.  
I work extra hours.  
They're polite to us.

He's always kind to them.  
They always help her.  
We're always busy on Friday.  
I always work extra hours.  
They're always polite to us.

**He drinks black coffee.  
She's calm about things.**

**He always drinks black coffee.  
She's always calm about things.**

**Exercise 9 / Lines A4 and B2 /**

**He always works hard.  
They're always late.  
She's always serious.  
They always speak English.  
He always writes carefully.  
She's always patient with him.  
They always wait for her.**

**Does he always work hard?  
Are they always late-?  
Is she always serious?  
Do they always speak English?  
Does he always write carefully?  
Is she always patient with him?  
Do they always wait for her?**

# 5. ASKING ABOUT ACTIVITIES/CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

- S1. When did you eat lunch today?  
S2. I ate from twelve to one.  
S1. Where did you have your lunch?  
S2. I had it at Pete's Restaurant today.

## Conversation B

- S1. Did you have a good time at party?  
S2. We had a wonderful time.  
S1. It was really a lot of fun.  
S2. We ought to have another party like that soon.

## Conversation C

- S1. Did you work at home last night?  
S2. Yes. I washed the dishes and cleaned the house.  
S1. Did you do anything else?  
S2. Yes. I listened to the radio for a while. I

## Conversation D

- S1. Did you have a good time last night?  
S2. Yes. I had a wonderful time.  
S1. You'll probably have fun tomorrow too.  
S4. I'm sure I'll have an excellent time.

## Conversation E

- S1. Where did you go?  
S2. We went to a beautiful beach.  
S1. Did you swim in the ocean?  
S2. Yes, but we swam close to the shore

## Exercise 1 / Line A1 /

When did you eat lunch today?

have the meeting  
Where  
meet your friends  
What time  
leave for home

When did you have the meeting today?  
Where did you have the meeting today?  
Where did you meet your friends today?  
What time did you meet your friends today?  
What time did you leave for home today?

## Exercise 2 / Line B3 /

It was really a lot of fun.

certainly

It Was certainly a lot of fun.

a great deal of  
definitely  
lots of  
actually

It was certainly a great deal of fun.  
It 'was definitely a great deal of fun.  
It was definitely lots of fun.  
It was actually lots of fun.

**Exercise 3 / line C1**

**Did you work at home last night?**

at the office  
Yesterday  
at school  
this morning  
at the Library

Did you work at the office last night?  
Did you work at the office yesterday?  
Did you work at school yesterday?  
Did you work at school this morning?  
Did you work at the library this morning?

**Exercise 4 / Lines E3 and E4 /**

Did you swim in the ocean?  
Did she go to the store?  
Did they write in their office?  
Did he read at the library"?  
Did we sing at school?  
Did Tom and you sleep at home?

Yes, we did. We swam in the ocean.  
Yes, she did. She went to the store.  
Yes, they did. They wrote in their office.  
Yes, he did. He read at the library.  
Yes, you did. You sang at school.  
Yes, we did. We slept at home.

## **6. WHAT DID YOU DO? / CONVERSATIONS**

---

### **Conversation A**

- S1. Where did you go after lunch?**  
**S2. I went to the public library.**  
**S1. Which one did you go to?**  
**S2. I went to the one at 42nd Street. ..**

### **Conversation B**

- S1. What did you do last night?**  
**S2. I watched television.**  
**S1. Where did you watch it?**  
**S2. I watched it here- in the recreation room.**

### **Conversation C**

- S1. Was that television program interesting?**  
**S2. I thought it was very boring.**  
**S1. What did your friends think of it?**  
**S2. They were bored too.**

### **Conversation D**

- S1. I went to a lecture last night.**  
**S2. What was it about?**  
**S1. Society and modern art**  
**S2. I wish I'd gone with you.**

### **Conversation E**

- S1. We went to the movies the night before last.**  
**S2. What did you see?**  
**S1. We saw a film about cowboys and Indians.**  
**S2. Don't you ever get tired of those westerns?**

## 7. TALKING ABOUT ACTIVITIES/CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. Where have you been?  
S2. I've been to the movies.  
S1. What did you see?  
S2. I saw an Italian movie about life in Sicily.

### Conversation B

- S1. What places have you seen so far?  
S2. I've been to almost all the museums.  
S1. Have you gone to any parks yet?  
S2. No, I haven't. I haven't had enough time for that.

### Conversation C

- S1. Let's meet at your house tonight.  
S2. O.K. That sounds fine.  
S1. I've forgotten how to get to your house.  
S2. Just take the Tenth Street bus to Third Avenue.

### Conversation D

- S1. Let's watch television for a while.  
S2: All right, but let's finish this work first.  
S1. Oh, let's not do the work right now.  
S2. You're just lazy, in my opinion.

### Conversation E

- S1. I can't hear the television set.  
S2. Why don't you sit closer?  
S1. I'm right beside it now.  
S2. Why don't you turn up the volume?

## **8. EVENING ACTIVITIES/CONVERSATIONS**

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. Let's go the movies tonight.

S2. Fine. I don't have anything else to do.

S1. What would you like to see?

S2. Why don't we look in the movie section of the newspaper?

### *Conversation B*

S1. Where are you going tonight?

S2. I'm going to the political rally for Senator Smith.

S1. Sounds interesting. Can we go with you?

S2. Certainly. Meet me here at eight fifteen.

### *Conversation C*

S1. Would you like to go to the concert with me tonight?

S2. Yes. Thank you very much.

S1. Would you like to go at about eight o'clock?

S2. That would be fine.

### *Conversation D*

S1. What are you going to do tonight?

S2. I haven't decided yet.

S1. Would you like to go to the movies?

S2. Can I call you and tell you later?

### *Conversation E*

S1. Would you like to go to the movies tonight?

S2. I'd rather stay home and watch television.

S1. Are there going to be any good programs tonight?

S2. Yes. There's going to be a good play on channel 4.

## **9. GENERAL ACTIVITIES/CONVERSATIONS**

---

**Conversation Drill A**

S1. Please sit down and talk to me.

S2. Are you (A)?

S1. Yes, I am. What are you doing?

S2. At the moment, I'm (B)

(A)

typing a letter  
painting a picture  
reading the paper  
watching television  
listening to a record  
working on something  
writing a report  
solving a puzzle

(B)

looking for some one  
just walking around  
waiting for a friend  
just resting a bit  
getting ready for dinner  
doing my work  
practicing English with You  
relaxing for a few minutes

**Conversation Drill B**

S1. What do you want to do tonight?

S2. Would you like to (A)?

S1. That would be nice.

S2. There's a good (B)

(A)

watch television  
go bowling with us  
see a movie  
listen to the radio  
attend a concert  
hear some folk music  
go to a play  
look for paintings

(B)

program on channel 3  
bowling alley nearby  
show at the corner theater  
comedy on station WXQZ  
orchestra at the auditorium  
group of musicians at the Star Club  
play which just opened  
art gallery on Eighth Street

# 10. MEETING AT THE TRAIN STATION/CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. I've got to go to the train station.  
S2. What do you have to go for?  
S1. To meet my cousin from Washington.  
S2. Let me take you in my car.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Did you get to the station on time?  
S2. We did, but we were almost late.  
S1. How close was it?  
S2. We got on the train just as it was starting.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. Did your cousin arrive on time?  
S2. No. He was an hour late.  
S1. Did you meet him at the station?  
S2. I was right there on the platform when the train came.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. Where's my bag?  
S2. Here it is.  
S1. Where's my briefcase?  
S2. There it is-over there.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Do you have your suitcases?  
S2. I've got one of them with me.  
S1. Where are the rest of them?  
S2. I checked my two other ones at the baggage room.

## *Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

I've got to go to the train station.

I must  
have to  
ought to  
should  
I'm supposed to

I must go to the train station.  
I have to go to the train station.  
I ought to go to the train station.  
I should go to the train station.  
I'm supposed to go to the train station.

## *Exercise 2 / Line A2 /*

What do you have to go for?  
What did you have to return for?  
What are you going to leave for?  
What are you going back for?  
What will you do that for?  
What have you done it for?

Why do you have to go?  
Why did you have to return?  
Why are you going to leave?  
Why are you going back?  
Why will you do that?  
Why have you done it?

**Exercise 3 / Line A4 /**

Please let me take you to your car.	Let me take you to your car
Please let me carry your suitcase.	Let me carry your suitcase
Please let me drive you to school.	Let me drive you to school
Please let me help you with that.	Let me help you with that
Please let me return the book for you	Let me return the book for you.

**Exercise 4 / Line B1 /**

Did you get to the station on time?

the airport  
late  
arrive at  
the theater  
early

Did you get to the airport on time?  
Did you get to the airport late?  
Did you arrive at the airport late?  
Did you arrive at the theater late?  
Did you arrive at the theater early?

**Exercise 5 / Line B4 /**

We got on the train just as it was starting.

the bus  
before it left  
the airplane  
a minute or two early

We got on the bus just as it was starting.  
We got on the bus just before it left.  
We got on the airplane just before it left.  
We got on the airplane just a minute or two early.

**Exercise 6 / Line C1 /**

Did your cousin arrive on time?

aunt  
uncle  
nephew  
niece  
grandmother

Did your aunt arrive on time?  
Did your uncle arrive on time?  
Did your nephew arrive on time?  
Did your niece arrive on time?  
Did your grandmother arrive on time?

**Exercise 7 / Line C 1 /**

Did your cousin arrive on time?

come  
get there  
return  
leave  
get back

Did your cousin come on time?  
Did your cousin get there on time?  
Did your cousin return on time?  
Did your cousin leave on time?  
Did your cousin get back on time?

**Exercise 8 / Line C1 /**

**Did your cousin arrive on time?**

late  
too late  
early  
before departure

Did your cousin arrive late?  
Did your cousin arrive too late?  
Did your cousin arrive too early?  
Did your cousin arrive before departure?

**Exercise 9 / Line C 1 /**

**Did your cousin arrive on time?**

uncle  
get back  
early  
nephew

Did your uncle arrive on time?  
Did your uncle get back on time?  
Did your uncle get back early?  
Did your nephew get back early?

**Exercise 10 / Line E2 /**

**I've got one of them with me.**

my suitcases  
a couple  
my packages  
several  
my things

I've got one of my suitcases with me.  
I've got a couple of my suitcases with me.  
I've got a couple of my packages with me.  
I've got several of my packages with me.  
I've got several of my things with me.

# 11. ASKING QUESTIONS AT THE TRAIN STATION / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. How do you get home every day?  
S2. I take the commuter train to Westport.  
S1. Isn't it rather expensive going by train?  
S2. No. I buy a twenty-trip commuter ticket each month.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Can you give me some information?  
S2. You're at the right place.  
S1. I want to go to Washington.  
S2. The next train leaves at four thirty.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. How soon does the train leave?  
S2. It leaves in ten minutes.  
S1. Do I have time to check my bags?  
S2. I don't think you do.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. At what time does the next train leave for the city?  
S2. There's one at four and another at four forty-five.  
S1. What's the fare?  
S2. It's eight fifty including tax.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. How much is the fare to Miami?  
S2. A hundred fifty dollars round trip.  
S3. What time does the next train leave?  
S4. One leaves at six thirty on track 31.

# 12. MEETING AT THE AIRPORT / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. Where will you meet your friends?  
S2. I'll meet them at the airport  
S1. When will they get there?  
S2. I don't know yet.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. When are you meeting your friends?  
S2. I'm meeting them at eight o'clock tomorrow night.  
S1. How are they getting here?  
S2. They're coming by air.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. Is this Southwestern Airlines?  
S2. Yes. May I help you?  
S1. Can you tell me when flight 439 will arrive?  
S2. One moment, please. I'll check.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. All the incoming flights are listed on that board.  
S2. I see they expect Bill's flight to be twenty minutes late.  
S1. Do they have an arrival gate listed?  
S2. No. They'll probably list it about ten minutes before arrival.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Well! How was your trip?  
S2. It was very smooth and fast.  
S1. Could you see the mountains from the plane?  
S2. Yes. The visibility was excellent all the way.

## *Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

Where will you meet your friends?

See  
find  
wait for  
take  
drive  
leave

Where will you see your friends?  
Where will you find your friends?  
Where will you wait for your friends?  
Where will you take your friends?  
Where will you drive your friends?  
Where will you leave your friends?

## *Exercise 2 / Line A1 /*

Where will you meet your friends?

cousin  
relatives  
parents  
brother  
sisters  
uncle  
aunt

Where will you meet your cousin?  
Where will you meet Your relatives?  
Where will you meet your parents?  
Where will you meet your brother?  
Where will you meet your sisters?  
Where did you meet your uncle?  
Where did you meet your aunt?

*Exercise .3 / Line A1 /*

Where will you meet your friends?

parents  
see  
When  
cousins  
get together with

Where will you meet your parents?  
Where will you see your parents?  
When will you see your parents?  
When will you see your cousins?  
When will you get together with you cousins?

*Exercise 4 / Line A2 /*

I'll meet them at the airport.

You'll  
We'll  
She'll  
They'll  
He'll

You'll meet them at the airport.  
We'll meet them at the airport.  
She'll meet them at the airport.  
They'll meet them at the airport.  
He'll meet them at the airport.

*Exercise 5 / Line A2 /*

I'll met them at the airport.

the train station  
the bus station  
the terminal  
the ticket window  
the entrance

I'll meet them at the train station.  
I'll meet them at the bus station.  
I'll meet them at the terminal.  
I'll meet them at the ticket window.  
I'll med them at the entrance.

*Exercise 6 / Line A2 /*

I'll meet them at the airport.

the bus station  
We'll  
wait for  
the ticket window  
She'll  
see

I'll meet them at the bus station.  
We'll meet them at the bus station.  
We'll wait for them at the bus station.  
We'll wait for them at the ticket window .  
She'll wait for them at the ticket window.  
She'll see them at the ticket window.

*Exercise 7 / Lin B2*

/

When are you meeting your friends?

seeing

When are you seeing your friends?

visitors  
Where  
taking  
guests  
Why

When are you seeing your visitors?  
Where are you seeing your visitors?  
Where are you taking your visitors?  
Where are you taking your guests?  
Why are you taking your guests?

*Exercise 8 / Line B2 /*

I'm meeting them at eight o'clock tomorrow night.

eight oh-five  
eight thirty  
a quarter to nine  
ten to nine  
Midnight

I'm meeting them at eight oh-five tomorrow night.  
I'm meeting them at eight thirty tomorrow night.  
I'm meeting them at a quarter to nine tomorrow night.  
I'm meeting them at ten to nine tomorrow night.  
I'm meeting them at midnight tomorrow night.

*Exercise 9 / Line B2 /*

I'm meeting them at eight o'clock tomorrow night.

tomorrow morning  
Friday night  
Friday morning  
tonight  
this morning

I'm meeting them at eight o'clock tomorrow morning.  
I'm meeting them at eight o'clock Friday night.  
I'm meeting them at eight o'clock Friday morning.  
I'm meeting them at eight o'clock tonight.  
I'm meeting them at eight o'clock this morning.

*Exercise 10 / Line B2 /*

I'm meeting them at eight o'clock tomorrow night.

Tuesday night  
We're  
eight thirty  
Her  
Morning

I'm meeting them at eight o'clock Tuesday night.  
We're meeting them at eight o'clock Tuesday night.  
We're meeting them at eight thirty Tuesday night.  
We're meeting her at eight thirty Tuesday night.  
We're meeting her at eight thirty Tuesday morning.

## 13. GETTING INFORMATION AT THE AIRPORT / CONVERSATIONS

---

*Conversation A*

S1. At what time does the next plane to London leave?  
S2. The next one is flight 12 at eleven fifty-five.  
S1. What's the next one after that?  
S2. Flight 21 at one oh-five.

*Conversation B*

S1. How often is there a flight to Paris?  
S2. We have flights to Paris every hour.  
S1. Are they nonstop flights?  
S2. Yes. Direct to Paris.

*Conversation C*

S1. Could I make a reservation for flight 10 to Tokyo?  
S2. I'm sorry, but everything is taken.  
S1. How about the next flight-tomorrow at two o'clock?  
S2. Yes. I can give you a reservation on that.

*Conversation D*

S1. I'd like to check in for the flight to New York.  
S2. Fine. Do you have your ticket and passport?  
S1. Yes. Here's my ticket, and I'll get out my passport.  
S2. Would you please put your baggage on the scales?

*Conversation E*

S1. How long is the flight from New York to Washington?  
S2. Well, supposedly an hour, but it's sometimes longer.  
S1. How often are there flights to Washington from New York?  
S2. There's one every hour.

# 14. GETTING TO THE HOTEL / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. What's a good hotel in this town?  
S2. The Jefferson Hotel is good.  
S1. How far is it from here?  
S2. It's quite close-about four blocks.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Where are you staying?  
S2. We're staying at an excellent hotel.  
S1. What's the name of the hotel?  
S2. The Eastern Hotel.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. How long will you be in New York?  
S2. I'll be here about two weeks.  
S1. Where are you going to stay?  
S2. I'm going to stay at the Madison Hotel.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. I'd like a single room) please.  
S2. Do you want a room with a bath?  
S1. Yes. please. Do you have one?  
S2. Yes. We have one at ten dollars a day.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. I have a reservation 'for a room here.  
S2. Yes. You're in room 341 on the third floor.  
S1. Can I take the elevator over there?  
S2. Yes, and turn right when you get off the elevator.

## *Exercise 1/ Line A1 /*

What's a good restaurant in this town?

jewelry store  
flower shop  
motel  
barber shop  
dress shop  
clothing store

What's a good jewelry store in this town?  
What's a good *flower* shop in this town?  
What's a' good motel in this town?  
What's a good barber shop in this town?  
What's a good dress shop in this town?  
What's a good clothing store in this town?

## *Exercise 2 / Line A1/*

What's a good restaurant in this town?

city  
neighborhood  
area  
district  
near here

What's a good restaurant in this city?  
What's a good restaurant in this neighborhood?  
What's a good restaurant in this area?  
What's a good restaurant in this district?  
What's a good restaurant near here?

*Exercise 3 / Line A1 /*

What's a good restaurant in this town?

hardware store  
area  
grocery store  
near here  
jewelry store

What's a good hardware store in this town?  
What's a good hardware store in this area?  
What's a good grocery store in this area?  
What's a good grocery store near here?  
What's a good jewelry store near here?

*Exercise 4 / Line A3 /*

How far is it from here?

from here to the hotel  
How many blocks  
from the station  
How many miles  
to the next city

How far is it from here to the hotel?  
How many blocks is it from here to the hotel?  
How many blocks is it from the station to the hotel?  
How many miles is it from the station to the hotel?  
How many miles is it from the station to the next city?

*Exercise 5 / Line B2 /*

We're staying at an excellent hotel.

living  
wonderful  
resort  
vacationing

We're living at an excellent hotel.  
We're living at a wonderful hotel.  
We're living at a wonderful resort.  
We're vacationing at a wonderful resort.

*Exercise 6 / Line C 1 /*

How long will you be in New York?

at the conference  
How many days  
in Japan  
weeks  
on the boat

How long will you. be at the conference?  
How many days will you be at the conference?  
How many days will you be in Japan?  
How many weeks will you be in Japan?  
How many weeks will you be on the boat?

*Exercise 7 / Line C 4 /*

I'm going to stay at the Madison Hotel.

We're.

We're going to stay at the Madison Hotel.

Central Motel  
She's  
a friend's house

We're going to stay at the Central Motel.  
She's going to stay at the Central Motel.  
She's going to stay at a friend's house.

*Exercise 8 / Line D2 /*

Do you want a room with a bath?

without  
prefer  
with two baths  
a suite  
Would you like

Do you want a room without a bath?  
Do you prefer a room without a bath?  
Do you prefer a room with two baths?  
Do you prefer a suite with two baths?  
Would you like a suite with two baths?

*Exercise 9 / Line E2 /*

You're in room 341 on the third floor.

576  
777  
894  
1201

You're in room 576 on the fifth floor.  
You're in room 777 on the seventh floor.  
You're in room 894 on the eighth floor.  
You're in room 1201 on the twelfth floor.

# 15. FINDING ONE'S HOTEL / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. Where's the hotel, please?  
S2. It's on Main Street.  
S1. Where's that?  
S2. It's the next street straight ahead.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Can you tell me where the hotel is?  
S2. It's in the next block.  
S1. On this side or the other side?  
S2. This side. Straight ahead of you.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. I want to go to the Beachside Hotel.  
S2. Do you have a map?  
S1. Yes, I do. Here it is  
S2. The hotel is right there –at that intersection.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. Excuse me. I'm lost.  
S2. Where do you live?  
S1. I live at Royal Hotel.  
S2. The Royal Hotel is two blocks that way.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Can you help me, please?  
S2. What's the matter?  
S1. Where is the grand hotel on this map?  
S2. It is right here-right next to the train station.

## *Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

Where's the hotel, please?

the drugstore  
the post office  
the police station  
the library  
the center of town

Where's the drugstore, please?  
Where's the post office, please?  
Where's "the police station, please?  
Where's the library, please?  
Where's the center of town, please?

## *Exercise 2 / Line A4 /*

It's the next street straight ahead.

first  
second  
third  
fourth  
fifth

It's the first street straight ahead.  
It's the second street straight ahead.  
It's the third street straight ahead.  
It's the fourth street straight ahead.  
It's the fifth street straight ahead.

*Exercise 3 / Line A4 /*

It's straight ahead.

around the corner  
two blocks from here  
past the post office  
near the library,  
right after the stoplight

It's around the corner.  
It's two blocks from here  
It's past the post office.  
It's near the library.  
It's right after the stoplight.

*Exercise 4 / Line B1 /*

Where's the hotel?  
Where's the drugstore?  
Where's the post office?  
Where's the police station?  
Where's the library?  
Where's the center of town?

Can you tell me where the hotel is?  
Can you tell me where the drugstore is?  
Can you tell me where the post office is?  
Can you tell me where the police station is?  
Can you tell me where the library is?  
Can you tell me where the center of town is?

*Exercise 5 / Lines B2 and C4 /*

The hotel is in the next block.

on Main Street  
near the police station  
across the street  
three blocks away  
at the intersection  
by the post office  
on Park Avenue

The hotel is on Main Street.  
The hotel is near the police station  
The hotel is across the street.  
The hotel is three blocks away  
The hotel is at the intersection  
The hotel is by the post office  
The hotel is on Park Avenue

*Exercise 6 / Line C1 /*

I want to go to the Beachside Hotel.

the Central Drugstore  
the Memorial Library  
Penny's Department Store  
the Park Avenue Pharmacy  
the J. F. Kennedy Airport

I want to go to the Central Drugstore.  
I want to go to the Memorial Library.  
I want to go to Penny's Department Store.  
I want to go to the Park Avenue Pharmacy.  
I want to go to the J. F. Kennedy Airport.

*Exercise 7 / Line D4 /*

The Royal Hotel is two blocks that way.

half a block

The Royal Hotel is half a block that way.

several blocks  
about ten blocks  
some distance  
a five-minute walk

The Royal Hotel is several blocks that way.  
The Royal Hotel is about ten blocks that way.  
The Royal Hotel is some distance that way.  
The Royal Hotel is a five-minute walk that way.

*Exercise 8 / Line D4 /*

The Royal Hotel is two blocks that way.

down the street  
up the street  
in that direction  
past the intersection  
the other way  
north of here

The Royal Hotel is two blocks down the street.  
The Royal Hotel is two blocks up the street.  
The Royal Hotel is two blocks in that direction.  
The Royal Hotel is two blocks past the intersection.  
The Royal Hotel is two blocks the other way.  
The Royal Hotel is two blocks north of here.

*Exercise 9 / Line D4 /*

The Royal Hotel is two blocks that way.

several blocks  
up the street  
about ten blocks  
in that direction  
a five-minute walk

The Royal Hotel is several blocks that way.  
The Royal Hotel is several blocks up the street.  
The Royal Hotel is about ten blocks up the street.  
The Royal Hotel is about ten blocks in that direction.  
The Royal Hotel is a five-minute walk in that direction.

*Exercise 10 / Line E3 /*

Where's the Grand Hotel on this map?

the Central Drugstore  
the Memorial Library  
Main Street  
the Madison Motel  
Greenwood Park

Where's the Central Drugstore on this map?  
Where's the Memorial Library on this map?  
Where's Main Street on this map?  
Where's the Madison Motel on this map?  
Where's Greenwood Park on this map?

## **16.ASKING DIRECTIONS/CONVERSATIONS**

---

*Conversation A*

S1. Where's the airlines office?

S2. It's near bus terminal--the Central Terminal.  
S1. How far is that from here?  
S2. About a half a mile, I think.

**Conversation B**

S1. Where's the post office?  
S2. It's three blocks that way.  
S1. What did you say?  
S2. Three blocks up that street.

**Conversation C**

S1. Where's airport?  
S2. It's north of the city.  
S1. What's the best way to get there?  
S4. Take Highway 15 to the north.

**Conversation D**

S1. What street is the local library on?  
S2. I don't know.  
S3. How can I find out?  
S2. Why don't you ask a policeman?

**Conversation E**

S1. Where's is the nearest telephone?  
S2. There's one in that drugstore.  
S1. Do you mean that store over there?  
S2. Yes. That's the one.

**Exercise 1 / Line A1 /**

Where's the airlines office?

the bus terminal  
the train station  
the airport  
the local library  
the nearest hospital  
the next bus stop

Where's the bus terminal?  
Where's the train station?  
Where's the airport?  
Where's the local library?  
Where's the nearest hospital?  
Where's the next bus stop?

**Exercise 2 / Line A4 /**

It's about a half a mile from here.

a quarter of a mile  
three quarters of a mile  
2 miles  
2 ½ miles  
a little over 3 kilometers

It's about a quarter of a mile from here.  
It's about three quarters of a mile from here  
It's about 2 miles from here.  
It's about 2 1/2 miles from here  
It's a little over 3 kilometers from here

**Exercise 3 / Line D1 /**

What street is the local library on?

the post office  
the police station  
the bus depot  
the fire department  
the nearest drugstore  
the closest bus stop

What street is the post office on?  
What street is the police station on?  
What street is the bus depot on?  
What street is the fire department on?  
What street is the nearest drugstore on?  
What street is the closest bus stop on?

*Exercise 4 / Line D3 /*

How can I find out?

find that address  
get that address  
look up his address  
locate the library  
get to the library

How can I find that address?  
How can I get that address?  
How can I look up his address  
How can I locate the library?  
How can I get to the library?

*Exercise 5 / Line D3 /*

How can I find out?

where it is  
where it's located  
what street it's on  
what district it's in  
what part of the city it's in  
what area it's in

How can I find out where it is?  
How can I find out where it's located?  
How can I find out what street it's on?  
How can I find out what district it's in?  
How can I find out what part of the city it's in?  
How can I find out what area it's in?

*Exercise 6 / Line D3 /*

Where is it?  
Where's the post office?  
Where's it located?  
What street is it on?  
What street is the library on?  
What district is it in?

How can I find out where it is?  
How can I find out where the post office is?  
How can I find out where it's located?  
How can I find out what street it's on?  
How can I find out what street the library is on?  
How can I find out what district it's in?

*Exercise 7 / Line D4 /*

Why don't you ask a policeman?

your friend  
that man over there  
the bus driver  
someone else  
the conductor  
the owner of that store

Why don't you ask your friend?  
Why don't you ask that man over there?  
Why don't you ask the bus driver?  
Why don't you ask someone else?  
Why don't you ask the conductor?  
Why don't you ask the owner of that store?

*Exercise 8 / Line E1 /*

Where's the nearest telephone?

drugstore  
clothing store  
grocery store  
flower shop  
dress shop

Where's the nearest drugstore?  
Where's the nearest clothing store?  
Where's the nearest grocery store?  
Where's the nearest flower shop?  
Where's the nearest dress shop?

*Exercise 9 / Line E2 /*

There's one in that drugstore.

near the drugstore  
in the hotel lobby  
on the second floor  
down the hallway  
on the table over there

There's one near the drugstore.  
There's one in the hotel lobby.  
There's one on the second floor.  
There's one down the hallway.  
There's one on the table over there.

*Exercise 10 / Line E3 /*

Do you mean that store over there?

across the street  
next to the train station  
on the corner  
opposite the airlines office  
a block down the street

Do you mean that store across the street?  
Do you mean that store next to the train station?  
Do you mean that store on the corner?  
Do you mean that store opposite the airlines office?  
Do you mean that store a block down the street?

## 17. GETTING INFORMATION/CONVERSATIONS

---

*Conversation A*

S1. What's the matter?  
S2. I need some information.  
S1. Go to that desk over there.  
S2. Thank you very much.

*Conversation B*

S1. Can you help me, please?

S2. I'll try to.  
S1. What's the best way to get to this address?  
S2. I'm sorry, but I really don't know.

*Conversation C*

S1. How can I get to that address?  
S2. You can go by taxi.  
S1. Isn't there any other way?  
S2. Yes, by bus, but it's complicated.

*Conversation D*

S1. How do I get to the nearest subway station?  
S2. It's two blocks up that street.  
S1. Do you mean the street running that way?  
S2. Yes. That's the one.

*Conversation E*

S1. Is this the right way to Grand Central Station?  
S2. No. You're going the wrong way.  
S1. Which way should I be going then?  
S2. It's in that direction-about six blocks.

*Exercise 1 / Line A2 /*

I need some information,

a little  
Assistance  
I'd appreciate  
with this work  
some more

I need a little information.  
I need a little assistance.  
I'd appreciate a little assistance  
I'd appreciate a little assistance with this work.  
I'd appreciate some more assistance with this work.

*Exercise 2 / Line A3 /*

Go to that desk over there.

across the room  
the counter  
Walk  
opposite that door  
the office

Go to that desk across the room  
Go to the counter across the room  
Walk to the counter across the room  
Walk to the counter opposite that door  
Walk to the office opposite that door

*Exercise 3 / Line B3 /*

What's the best way to get to this address?

fastest  
easiest  
quickest  
shortest  
least difficult

What's the fastest way to get to this address?  
What's the easiest way to get to this address-?  
What's the quickest way to get to this address?  
What's the shortest way to get to this address?  
What's the least difficult way to get to this address?

**Exercise 4 / Line B3 /**

**What's the best way to get to this address?**

**the center of town**

**What's the best way to get to the center of town?**

**the local shopping center**

**What's the best way to get to the local shopping center?**

**the Central Hotel**

**What's the best way to get to the Central Hotel?**

**Eastern College**

**What's the best way to get to Eastern College?**

**Exercise 5 / Line B3 /**

**What's the best way to get to this address:**

**Fastest**

**What's the fastest way to get to this address?**

**to the center of town**

**What's the fastest way to get to the center of town?**

**Drive**

**What's the fastest way to drive to the center of town.**

**Easiest**

**What's the easiest way to drive to center of town?**

**to the Central Hotel**

**What's the easiest way to drive to the Central Hotel.**

**Exercise 6 / Line C2 /**

**You can go by taxi.**

**ought to**

**You ought to go by taxi.**

**by bus**

**You ought to go by bus.**

**There**

**You ought to go there by bus.**

**Should**

**You should go there by bus.**

**on the train**

**You should go there on the train.**

**Exercise 7 / line D1 /**

**How do I get to the subway station?**

**the bus depot**

**How do I get to the bus depot?**

**reach**

**How do I reach the bus depot?**

**Highway 16**

**How do I reach Highway 16?**

**find**

**How do I find Highway 16?**

**the baggage room**

**How do I find the baggage room?**

**Exercise 8 / Line D2 /**

**It's two blocks up that street.**

**a few**

**It's a few blocks down that street.**

**a short distance**

**It's a short distance down that street.**

**along the highway**

**It's a short distance along the highway.**

**several miles**

**It's several miles along the highway.**

## **18.FINDING ONE'S WAY / CONVERSATIONS**

---

### *Conversation A*

**S1.Pardon me. "Where's the Central Theater?**

**S2.It's in the next block-straight'- ahead.**

**S1.Thank You very much .**

**S2.That's all right.**

### *Conversation B*

**S1. Where's the National Department Store?**

**S2. It's down town-on Brown Street.**

**S1. Do you know the exact address?**

**S2. Yes. It's 521 Brown Street.**

### *Conversation C*

**S1. Can you tell me where the library is located?**

**S2. Yes. Do you see that church down the street'?**

S1. Yes. It's quite easy to see with such a tall spire.  
S2. Just turn left there and walk three blocks.

*Conversation D*

S1. Are the instructions too complicated for you?  
S2. Well, would you mind repeating them?  
S1. I'd be glad to.  
S2. I'd like to write them down this time.

*Conversation E*

S1. Can you tell me where the station is?  
S2. Turn right and go four blocks.  
S1. Would you mind repeating that?  
S2. I'd be glad to.

## 19. ASKING ABOUT BUSINESS / CONVERSATIONS

---

*Conversation A*

S1. Where do I get the downtown bus?  
S2. Walk straight ahead one block  
S1. Thanks very much  
S2. Don't mention it.

*Conversation B*

S1. Where does the bus stop?  
S2. At the next corner.  
S1. Does it go downtown?  
S2. Only the number 5 bus goes downtown

*Conversation C.*

S1. Are there many bus stops along this street?  
S2. Yes, there are. There are quite a few.  
S1. Are they located at the corners?

**S2. Most of them are, but a few aren't.**

***Conversation D***

**S1. How do I get to the station?**

**S2. Take the bus at the next corner.**

**S1. Do you know which bus I take?**

**S2. Watch for number 32.**

***Conversation E***

**S1. How much is the fare on this bus?**

**S2. It's fifteen cents.**

**S1. do I give the money to you.**

**S2. No just drop it in this machine.**

## **20. TRAVELING BY BUS / CONVERSATIONS**

***Conversation A***

**S1. Does this bus go into the city?**

**S2. Yes. Where do you want to go?**

**S1. I want to go to Harbor Heights.**

**S2. This is the right bus then.**

***Conversation B***

**S1. Does this bus go as far as Washington Square?**

**S2. No. You'll have to transfer.**

**S1. Where can I do it?**

**S2. You can get the Washington Square bus at the next corner.**

***Conversation C***

**S1. Is this where I get off the bus?**

**S2. No. Not here--at the next stop.**

**S1. Can I catch a taxi right there?**

**S2. Yes. There's a taxi stand right by the bus stop.**

***Conversation D***

**S1. Excuse me, but how do I get to this address?**  
**S2. Get off the bus at Water Street and Main.**  
**S1. Thanks very much for your help.**  
**S2. Don't mention it.**

***Conversation E***

**S1. Is West Street the next stop?**  
**S2. I'm sorry, but I didn't understand you.**  
**S1. Does the bus stop at West Street next?**  
**S2. Yes. Right at the next corner.**

## 21. GOING BY TAXI / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. Where are you going now?

S2. To the hotel.

S1. Are you going by bus or by taxi.

S2. Probably by taxi if I can get one.

### *Conversation B*

S1. I need a taxi.

S2. The taxis are by the entrance.

S1. Thank you much.

S2. You're welcome.

### *Conversation C*

S1. Is this taxi taken?

S2. No. Where are you going?

S1. I'm going to the University Student Center.

S2. O.K. I know right where it is.

### *Conversation D*

S1. How much is the fare?

S2. Two dollars and fifty cents.

S1. Here. Keep the change.

S2. Thank you very much

### *Conversation E*

S1. It's raining very hard right now.

S2. Why don't we get a taxi?

S1. That's a good idea.

S2. Now, I only hope we can find one.

## 22. TAKING A TRIP BY CAR / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Are you taking a trip today?  
S2. Yes. We're going to Boston.  
S1. It's a good day for the trip  
S2. I'm glad the sun is shining

### *Conversation B*

- S1. How far is it from here to the coast?  
S2. It's about 250 miles.  
S1. How long does it take to get there by car?  
S2. It takes about five hours.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. How far is it to the next gas station?  
S2. There's one two miles from here.  
S1. Is there a place to eat there?  
S2. Yes. There's a restaurant next to the station.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. What's the best way to Ocean City.  
S2. The superhighway, but it's also the longest way.  
S1. How much longer is it that way?  
S2. About 10 or 12 miles.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Are they going by way of North Plains?  
S2. No. They aren't taking that route.  
S1. How are they traveling then?  
S2. They're driving directly to Ocean City.

## 23. TRAVEL PLANS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. I have to take a trip by air next week.

S2. Do you like to fly?

S1. I don't know because I've never flown before.

S2. You'll probably like it very much.

### *Conversation B*

S1. I have to go home next week.

S2. How will you go-by car?

S1. I'll probably go by air.

S2. You'll get there very fast then.

### *Conversation C*

S1. Are you going on a trip next Saturday?

S2. Yes. We're going to Boston.

S1. Are you flying or going by train?

S2. We're traveling by car.

### *Conversation D*

S1. How will you travel to Los Angeles?

S2. We'll go by plane.

S1. How long will it take?

S2. It'll take about five or six hours to get there.

### *Conversation E*

S1. What time will you leave your house?

S2. I'll leave around seven thirty.

S1. How are you going to go-by train or by bus?

S2. Neither. I'm going to drive.

## 24. HOW DO I GET THERE? / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation Drill A*

S1. Excuse me. Where's (A)?  
S2. It's (B).  
S1. Thank you for the help.  
S2. That's all right.

(A)  
the rest room  
the post office  
the bus terminal  
the ticket office

(B)  
down the hall  
around the corner  
in the next block  
by the main entrance

### *Conversation Drill B*

S1. Where's the (A)?  
S2. It's on this floor.  
S1. How can I get there from here?  
S2. (B)

(A)  
reception desk  
main office  
Cafeteria  
cashier's window

(B)  
Turn left right over there  
Walk straight ahead.  
Go in the second door on the right  
Just walk to the end of this hall.

### *Conversation Drill C*

S1. How do I get to the train station?  
S2. Turn left (A).  
S1. How far is it (B)?  
S2. It's about a quarter of a mile.

(A)  
at the second stoplight  
in the center of town  
at the next intersection  
at Main Street  
by the bus depot

(B)  
to the stoplight  
to the center  
to the intersection  
to Main Street  
to the depot

# 25. ASKING THE TIME / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. What time do you have?  
S2. It's ten o'clock sharp.  
S1. Thanks a lot.  
S2. Don't mention it.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. What's the time?  
S2. It's almost eight.  
S1. Do you have the exact time?  
S2. Yes, it's two minutes to eight.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. Excuse me. What time is it?  
S2. It's a quarter of two.  
S1. I guess my watch is slow then.  
S2. Well, I know mine isn't fast.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. What time is it right now?  
S2. It's a five twenty five.  
S1. I've got five thirty five.  
S2. You're ten minutes fast then.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Do you have the correct time?  
S2. Yes. It's two minutes to three.  
S1. Are you sure your watch is right?  
S2. It may be a few minutes slow.

## *Exercise 1 / Line B2 /*

It's almost eight thirty.

about  
just about  
around  
close to  
nearly

It's about eight thirty.  
It's just about eight thirty.  
It's around eight thirty.  
It's close to eight thirty.  
It's nearly eight thirty.

## *Exercise 2 / Line D2 /*

It's five o'clock.  
It's five fifteen.  
It's a quarter after five.  
It's twenty after five.

Is it five o'clock?  
Is it five fifteen?  
Is it a quarter after five?  
Is it twenty after five?

It's five twenty-five.  
It's five thirty.  
It's twenty to six:  
It's five forty-five.  
It's a quarter to six.  
It's ten to six.

Is it five twenty-five?  
Is it five thirty?  
Is it twenty to six?  
Is it five forty-five?  
Is it a quarter to six?  
Is it ten to six?

**Exercise 3 / Lines D2,D3,D4 /**

It's five o'clock, but I've got five ten                      You're ten minutes fast then.  
It's five o'clock, but I've got ten to five You're ten minutes slow then.  
It's five fifteen, but I've got five twelve You're three minutes slow then.  
It's five twenty-five, but I've got              five thirty              You're five minutes fast then  
It's five to six, but I've got five forty-five              You're ten minutes fast then

**Exercise 4 / Line E3 /**

Is your watch right?  
Is your watch wrong?  
Is your watch slow?  
Is your watch fast?  
Is your watch correct?

Are you sure your watch is right?  
Are you sure-your watch is wrong?  
Are you sure your watch is slow?  
Are you sure your watch is fast?  
Are you' Sure your watch is correct?

## **26. ASKING THE TIME(2) / CONVERSATIONS**

---

**Conversation A**

S1. What time is it now?  
S2. I don't have my watch on right now.  
S1. Is there a clock around here?  
S2. There's one in the next room.

**Conversation B**

S1. Do you have the right time?  
S2. I was just going to ask you the same question.  
S1. My watch has stopped.  
S2. I forgot to wear mine.

**Conversation C**

S1. Do you have any idea of the time?  
S2. I don't know exactly, but it's after nine.  
S1. It was nine o'clock when I got here.  
S2. Well, I'm sorry I can't help you.

**Conversation D**

S1. At what time is the meeting?  
S2. Eight o'clock.  
S1. Be there at eight o'clock sharp, then.  
S2. I'll try to get there before eight.

**Conversation E**

S1. How often does this station give the news?  
S2. Every hour on the hour.  
S1. When do they announce the weather?  
S2. Ten minutes to and ten minutes after the hour.

**Exercise 1 / Line A2 /**

I don't have my watch on right now.

coat  
hat  
shoes  
Sweater  
wristwatch

I don't have my coat on right now.  
I don't have my hat on right now.  
I don't have my shoes on right now.  
I don't have my sweater on right now.  
I don't have my wristwatch on right now.

**Exercise 2 / Line A3 /**

Is there a clock around here?

in this room  
in the other room  
in this building  
on the table  
on the wall  
near this room

Is there a clock in this room?  
Is there a clock in the other room?  
Is there a clock in this building?  
Is there a clock on the table?  
Is there a clock on the wall?  
Is there a clock near this room?

**Exercise 3 / Line A3 /**

Is there a clock around here?

a big clock  
an electric clock  
a wall clock  
any clocks  
any wall clocks

Is there a big clock around here?  
Is there an electric clock around here?  
Is there a wall clock around here?  
Are there any clocks around here?  
Are there any wall clocks around here?

*Exercise 4 / Line A3 /*

Is there a clock around here?

in the other room  
Electric  
in this building  
Clocks  
any  
around here

Is there a clock in the other room?  
Is there an electric clock in the other room?  
Is there an electric clock in this building?  
Are there electric clocks in this building?  
Are there any electric clocks in this building?  
Are there any electric clocks around here?

*Exercise 5 / Line B1 /*

Do you have the time?

Right  
have any idea of  
know the right time  
Correct  
right now  
exact

Do you have the right time?  
Do you have any idea of the right time?  
Do you know the right time?  
Do you know the correct time?  
Do you know the correct time right now?  
Do you know the exact time right now?

*Exercise 6 / Line B2 /*

I was just going to ask you the same question.

the time  
tell  
Preparing  
it's twelve o'clock  
a quarter to one

I was just going to ask you the time.  
I was just going to tell you the time.  
I was just preparing to tell you the time.  
I was just preparing to tell you it's twelve o'clock.  
I was just preparing to tell you it's a quarter to one.

*Exercise 7 / Line C3 /*

It was nine o'clock when I got here.

about  
three twenty  
arrived  
at the office  
sharp

It was about nine o'clock when I got here.  
It was about three twenty when I got here.  
It was about three twenty when I arrived here.  
It was about three twenty when I arrived at the office.  
It was three twenty sharp when I arrived at the office.

*Exercise 8 / Line D1 /*

At what time is the meeting?

the lecture  
the conference  
the party

At what time is the lecture?  
At what time is the conference?  
At what time is the party?

the concert  
the football game  
the program

At what time is the concert?  
At what time is the football game?  
At what time is the program?

*Exercise 9 / Line D 1 /*

At what time is the meeting?

At what time of the day  
On what day  
On what day of the week  
In what month  
In what month of the year

At what time of the day is the meeting?  
On what day is the meeting?  
On what day of the week is the meeting?  
In what month is the meeting?  
In what month of the year is the meeting?

*Exercise 10 / Line D1 /*

At what time is the meeting?

the lecture  
At what time of the day  
the conference  
On what day  
the party

At what time is the lecture?  
At what time of the day is the lecture?  
At what time of the day is the conference?  
On what day is the conference?  
On what day is the party?

*Exercise 11 / Line D1 /*

The meeting is at eight.  
At what time is the meeting?  
The lecture is on Tuesday.  
On what day is the lecture?  
The conference is in June.  
In what month is the conference?  
The party is at seven thirty.  
At what time is the party?  
The football game is on Friday.  
On what day is the football game?

At what time is the meeting?  
It's at eight  
On what day is the lecture?  
It's on Tuesday  
In what month is the conference?  
It's in June  
At-what Time is the party?  
It's at seven thirty  
On what day is the football game?  
It's on Friday.

*Exercise 12 / Line D3 /*

Be there at eight o'clock sharp, then.

at eight thirty  
exactly at noon  
before three o'clock  
around ten fifteen  
about four thirty or five

Be there at eight thirty sharp, then.  
Be there exactly at noon, then.  
Be there before three o'clock, then.  
Be there around ten fifteen, then.  
Be there about four thirty or five, then.

*Exercise 13 / Line E1/*

This station gives the news.  
This station announces the weather  
This station gives concerts.  
This station announces traffic  
conditions  
This station gives plays.

How often does this station give the news?  
How often does this station announce the weather?  
How often does this station give concerts?  
How often does this station announce  
traffic conditions?  
How often does this station give plays?

**Exercise 14 / Line E3 /**

**This station gives the news.**

**This station announces the weather.**

**This station gives concerts.**

**This station announces traffic conditions.**

**This station gives plays.**

**When does this station give the news?**

**When does this station announce the weather?**

**When does this station give concerts?**

**When does this station announce traffic conditions?**

**When does this station give plays?**

## **27. GOING BY THE CLOCK / CONVERSATIONS**

---

**Conversation A**

**S1. When is your first class?**

**S2. At ten after nine.**

**S1. When do you get back here, then?**

**S2. About ten to twelve.**

**Conversation B**

**S1. Alice will be back in ten or fifteen minutes.**

**S2. How long has she been out of the office?**

**S1. She's been out since ten o'clock.**

**S2. Then she's been out for an hour or more.**

**Conversation C**

**S1. I got to the cafeteria around noon.**

**S2. I was there, but I didn't see you.**

S1. I think I left a few minutes after twelve.  
S2. I must have just missed you, then.

*Conversation D*

S1. Our friends Will meet us here.  
S2. Will they come here right after lunch?  
S1. No. They won't be here until three o'clock.  
S2. Then I'll come a little before three.

*Conversation E*

S1. Let's call Mary.  
S2. Let's not call her right now.  
S1. Maybe this is a bad time to call.  
S2. Let's wait until seven or seven thirty.

## 28. ARRIVING EARLY OR LATE / CONVERSATIONS

---

*Conversation A*

S1. I'm afraid we're going to be late.  
S2. How much time is there left?  
S1. We've got about thirty or forty minutes.  
S2. That should be plenty of time.

*Conversation B*

S1. Whom are you waiting for?  
S2. We're waiting for our friend.  
S1. What are you looking so angry for?  
S2. Because she's twenty minutes late already.

*Conversation C*

S1. Aren't we going to be late for the meeting?  
S2. No. I think we'll be on time.  
S1. Well, I want to be there in time to get a good seat.  
S2. The meeting doesn't start for another twenty minutes.

***Conversation D***

**S1. Isn't Harry here yet?**

**S2. Here he comes now.**

**S1. Eight forty-five. Late as usual.**

**S2. Well, we can still get to school on time.**

***Conversation E***

**S1. Are we late or not?**

**S2. No. In fact we're early according to my watch.**

**S1. Hadn't we better go inside?**

**S2. All right, but we're really about a half an hour early.**

## 29. WATCHES AND THE TIME / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation Drill A

S1. Could you tell me the time, please?

S2. Certainly. It's (A)

S1. My watch says (B)

S2. Then your watch is (C)

(A)

3:10

4:15

12:45

9:05

1:30

7:55

2:00

8:45

(B)

five after three

four twenty

eighteen to one

nine oh-five

one o'clock

five after seven

one 0'clock

twelve fifteen

(C)

five minutes slow

five minutes fast

three minutes slow

right on time

half an hour off

ten minutes off

an hour behind

not operating

### Conversation Drill B

S1. Where's your brother?

S2. I think he s (A) now.

S1. Will he come back here (B)?

S2. Yes. I think so.

(A)

at the store

at work

at his office

at school

at the library

at church

at the factory

at home

(B)

very soon

before five 0'clock

at the usual time

within an hour

in the afternoon

at six fifteen

in time for dinner

in an hour or so

# 30.TIME AND THE CALENDAR / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

S1. When does February have twenty-nine days?

S2. In leap year.

S1. How often is there a leap year?

S2. Every fourth year.

## *Conversation B*

S1. How many days are there in leap year?

S2. There are three hundred and sixty-six.

S1. How many weeks are there in a year?

S2. There are fifty-two weeks a year.

## *Conversation C*

S1. What are the seasons in this country?

S2. Winter, spring, summer, and fall.

S1. How many months are there in a season?

S2. There are three months in each season.

## *Conversation D*

S1. Today is the first day of spring.

S2. I didn't realize it.

S1. Aren't you glad it's here?

S2. I'm always glad when winter is over.

## *Conversation E*

S1. The weather is perfect today, isn't it?

S2. Yes. I like this season of the year very much.

S1. Most people like this season best of all, don't they?

S2. Well, I'm sure a lot of people do.

## *Exercise 1 / Lines B1-B4, G3, C4 /*

How many days are there in a year?  
How many weeks are there in a year?  
How many months are there in a year?  
How many seasons are there in a year?  
How many months are there in a season?  
How many days are there in a week?  
How many days are there in June?  
How many days are there in October?  
How many years are there in a decade?  
How many years are there in a century?

There are three hundred and sixty-five.  
There are fifty-two.  
There are twelve.  
There are four  
There are three.  
There are seven  
There are thirty.  
There are thirty-one.  
There are ten  
There are one hundred.

## *Exercise 2 / Line D 1 /*

Today is the first day of spring.

Yesterday  
Tomorrow  
Last Friday  
Next Thursday  
This coming Monday

Yesterday was the first day of spring  
Tomorrow .will be the first day of spring.  
Last Friday was the first day of spring.  
Next Thursday will be the first day of spring.  
This coming Monday will be the First day of spring.

*Exercise 3J / Line D 1 /*

Today is the first day of spring.

summer  
winter  
September  
the new year  
our summer vacation

Today is the first day of summer.  
Today is the first day of winter.  
Today is the first day of September.  
Today-is the first day of the new year.  
Today is the first day or our Summer vacation.

*Exercise 4 / Line D4 /*

When is winter over?  
Are you glad then?  
When is spring over?  
Are you sorry then?  
When is summer over?  
Are you glad then?  
When is fall over?  
Are you sorry then?

It's over about March twenty-first.  
I'm always glad when winter is over.  
It's over about June twenty-first.  
I'm always sorry when spring is over.  
It's over about September twenty- first.  
I'm always glad when summer is over.  
It's over about December twenty-first.  
I'm always sorry when fall is over.

*Exercise 5 / Line E1 /*

The weather is perfect today, isn't it?

terrible  
wonderful  
awful  
unusual  
unusually nice

The weather is terrible today, isn't it?  
The weather is wonderful today, isn't it?  
The weather is awful today, isn't it?  
The weather is unusual today, isn't it?  
The weather is unusually nice today, isn't it?

*Exercise 6 / Line E1 /*

Today is very warm, isn't it? Today isn't very warm, is it?  
Today is very cold, isn't it? Today isn't very cold, is it?  
Today is very hot, isn't it? Today isn't very hot, is it?  
Today is very cool, isn't it? Today isn't very cool, is it?  
Today is very humid, isn't it? Today isn't very humid, is it?  
Today is very clear, isn't it? Today isn't very clear, is it?

*Exercise 7 / Line E3 /*

Most people like this season best of all, don't they?

A lot of people A lot of people like this season best of all, don't they?

Some people  
A few 'people  
Few people  
Not many people

Some people like this season best of all, don't they?  
A few people like this season best of all, don't they?  
Few people like this season best of all, do they?  
Not many people like this season best of all, do they?

## **31.DAYS,DATES,AND SEASON / CONVERSATIONS**

---

Conversation Drill A

S1. What day is today?

S2. It's (A) today.  
S1. What's the date?  
S2. It's (B)

(A)	(B)
Tuesday	March fifteenth
Thursday	October twenty-first
Wednesday	the third of August
Sunday	September thirtieth
Friday	the fourteenth of December

#### Conversation Drill B

S1. I know about the seasons in the United States now.  
S2. Then when does (A) begin?  
S1. It begins in (B)  
S2. That's right. It begins in (B)

(A)	(B)
spring	March
fall	September
summer	June
winter	December

#### Conversation Drill C

S1. I'm familiar with the seasons already.  
S2. What are the names of the (A)  
S1. They're (B)  
S2. Right. (B) are the (A) months

(A)	(B)
summer	June, July, and August
spring	March, April, and May
winter	December, January, and February
fall	September, October, and November

## 32. LIVING IN AN APARTMENT / CONVERSATIONS

---

#### Conversation A

S1. What floor is your apartment on?  
S2. It's on the third floor.  
S1. Is the building a walk-up?  
S2. No. It has a small elevator.

### **Conversation B**

**S1. How large is your apartment?**

**S2. It has four and a half rooms.**

**S1. Then you have two bedrooms .**

**S2. Right. A living room, a kitchen, two bedrooms, and a bath.**

### **Conversation C**

**S1. Is this your apartment?**

**S2. Yes, it is.**

**S1. How many bedrooms do you have?**

**S2. Two big ones and one small one.**

### **Conversation D**

**S1. What's a cooperative apartment?**

**S2. In a cooperative, you actually buy the apartment.**

**S1. Just as you would buy a house?**

**S2. Yes. Then you only pay maintenance costs each month.**

### **Conversation E**

**S1. Do you like your new apartment?**

**S2. Yes. I like the service in the building, too.**

**S1. Are there doormen and guards?**

**S2. Yes, and the building is close to the shopping areas.**

# **33.LIVING IN A HOUSE / CONVERSATIONS**

---

## **Conversation A**

**S1. How much did you pay for your house?**

**S2. It cost eighteen thousand dollars, and we've spent another two thousand on repairs.**

**S1. Did you have trouble getting a mortgage?**

**S2. No. We paid four thousand dollars, and the bank lent us the rest.**

## **Conversation B**

**81. Do you prefer a one-story or a two-story house?**

**S2. One-story, I think.**

**S1. I do too, because there are no stairs to climb.**

**S2. But one-story houses take more land.**

## **Conversation C**

**S1. Your house is very large.**

**S2. Yes. We have enough room for guests now.**

**S1. Our house is too small.**

**S2. You don't have enough room, do you?**

## **Conversation D**

**S1. Where's the bathroom?**

**S2. The bathroom is opposite that big bedroom.**

**S1. Is this the kitchen?**

**S2. Yes. It's a big kitchen, isn't it?**

## **Conversation E**

**S1. I enjoy having a house in the suburbs.**

**S2. It's wonderful to have trees and a big yard.**

**S1. The children can play outside most of the time.**

**S2. And it's so much cleaner here than in the city.**

# 34.USING THE TELEPHONE / CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

S1. Could you give me the number of the Best Bag Company?

S2. Is that in the city or in the suburbs?

S1. In the city. On the tenth street.

S2. Just a moment, please.

## Conversation B

S1. What is the telephone number of Pan-Eastern Airways?

S2. Just a moment, please.

S1. Thank you Operator.

S2. That number is Hillside 6-7600.

## Conversation C

S1. I'd Like to speak to Bob, Please.

S2. What number are you calling?

S1. M-U-one- four-three-seven -six.

S2. Sorry. You've got the wrong number.

## Conversation D

S1. May I speak to the director, please?

S2. Who's calling, please?

S1. Tell him it's his friend from California.

S2. Just a Moment please

## Conversation E

S1. I'd like to speak to Mr. Bush, Please.

S2. May I ask who is calling, Please?

S1. Tell him it's his assistant.

S2. Please hold the line while I see if he's in.

# 35.GETTING HELP IN STORES / CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

- S1. Do you wish some assistance?  
S2. Yes. How much is that pen?  
S1. This one or that one?  
S2. The one next to the black one.

## Conversation B

- S1. May I help you?  
S2. Yes. I'd like to look at pens.  
S1. Certainly. Fountain pens or ball-point pens?  
S2. I'm looking for a good fountain pen.

## Conversation C

- S1. Could you help me, please?  
S2. What can I do for you?  
S1. Could I look at the wristwatch in this case?  
S2. Just one moment, please, while I get the key.

## Conversation D

- S1. Hello. Are you waited on?  
S2. No. I'd like a ream of typing paper, please.  
S1. Will there be anything else?  
S2. No. I believe that's all, thank you.

## Conversation E

- S1. Is someone helping you?  
S2. I beg your pardon?  
S1. Could I help you with anything?  
S2. No, thanks. Someone is already waiting on me.

## Exercise 1 / Line A1 /

Do you wish some assistance?

want  
help  
Would you like  
advice  
care for

Do you want some assistance?  
Do you want some help?  
Would you like some help?  
Would you 'like some advice?  
Would you care for some advice?

## Exercise 2 / Line A2 /

How much is that pen?  
How much are those dishes?  
How much is that briefcase?  
How much are those gloves?

How much does that pen cost?  
How much do those dishes cost?  
How much does that briefcase cost?  
How much do those gloves cost?

How much is that alarm clock?  
How much are those glasses?

How much does that alarm clock cost?  
How much do those glasses cost?

*Exercise 3/ Line A2 /*

How much does that pen cost?  
How much do those dishes cost?  
How much does that briefcase cost?  
How much do those gloves cost?  
How much does that alarm clock cost?  
How much do those glasses cost?

What does that pen cost?  
What do those dishes cost?  
What does that briefcase cost?  
What do those gloves cost?  
What does that alarm clock cost?  
What do those glasses cost?

*Exercise 4 / Line A2 /*

How much is that pen?  
How much are those glasses?  
How much is that billfold?  
How much are those two ashtrays?  
How much is that small vase?

What does that pen cost?  
What do those glasses cost?  
What does that billfold cost?  
What do those two ashtrays cost?  
What does that small vase Cost?-

*Exercise 5/ Line A4 /*

I mean the one next to the black one.

Beside  
close to  
behind  
in front of  
opposite  
Near  
Under

I mean the one beside the black one.  
I mean the one close to the black one  
I mean the one behind the black one.  
I mean the one in front of the black one  
I mean the one opposite the black one.  
I mean the one near the black one.  
I mean the one under the black one.

*Exercise 6 / Line B2 /*

I'd like to look at pens. May I look at your pens?  
I'd like to look at cameras. May I look at your cameras?  
I'd like to look at billfolds. May I look at your billfolds?  
I'd like to look at watches. May I look at your watches?  
I'd like to look at suitcases. May I look at your suitcases?  
I'd like to look at suits. May I look at your suits?  
I'd like to look at overcoats. May I look at your overcoats?

*Exercise 7 / Line B4 /*

I'm looking for a good fountain pen.

expensive  
wristwatch  
cheap  
camera  
small  
Practical

I'm looking for an expensive fountain pen.  
I'm looking for an expensive wristwatch.  
I'm looking for a cheap wristwatch.  
I'm looking for a cheap camera.  
I'm looking for a small camera.  
I'm looking for a practical camera.

*Exercise 8 / Line C1 /*

Could you help me, please?

**Assist**  
**Would**  
**ad vise**  
**Can**  
**wait on me**  
**take care of**

**Could you assist me, please?**  
**Would you assist me, please?**  
**Would you advise me, please?**  
**Can you advise me, please?**  
**Can you wait on me, please?**  
**Can you take care of me please?**

***Exercise 9 / Line C3 /***

**Could I look at the wristwatch in this case?**

**gold pen**  
**in the black box**  
**small camera**  
**on the shelf**  
**black leather billfold**

**Could I look at the gold pen in this case?**  
**Could I look at the gold pen in the black box?**  
**Could I look at the small camera in the black box?**  
**Could I look at the small camera on the shelf?**  
**Could I look at the black leather, billfold on the shelf?**

***Exercise 10 / Line D2 /***

**I'd like a ream of typing paper, please.**

**a pad of drawing paper**  
**a packet of lined paper**  
**a bottle of ink**  
**a box of paper clips**  
**a box of stationery**

**I'd like a pad of drawing paper, please.**  
**I'd like a packet of lined paper, please.**  
**I'd like a bottle of ink, please.**  
**I'd like a box of paper clips, please.**  
**I'd like a box of stationery, please.**

## 36. GOING SHOPPING / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. What store did you go to yesterday?

S2. I went to the Central Department Store.

S1. Do they have a good variety of things to choose from?

S2. They have lots to choose from, but it's all very expensive.

### *Conversation B*

S1. What were you doing at that department store?

S2. I was shopping for a new suitcase.

S1. What was your friend doing there?

S2. She was trying to find a coat.

### *Conversation C*

S1. I have to go shopping.

S2. Do you know what you're going to buy?

S1. Not yet, but I hope to after shopping.

S2. I hate to go shopping, but I guess it's necessary.

### *Conversation D*

S1. What time do the stores close?

S2. Most of them close at six o'clock.

S1. Do we still have time to go shopping?

S2. Yes. It's only four fifteen now.

### *Conversation E*

S1. It seems I always have to buy a lot of things.

S2. It always seems that way to me too.

S1. I always need so many little things.

S2. They add up to a lot of money, don't they?

# 37.TALKING ABOUT SHOPPING / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

S1. Where do you do your shopping?

S2. I usually start at the Central Department Store.

S1. What do you think of their selection?

S2. They have a good selection, and their prices are low, too.

## *Conversation B*

S1. They're having a big sale at the Greenfield Shopping Center.

S2. Anything in particular on sale?

S1. Well, they advertised linens and house furnishings.

S2. I suppose there'll be crowds or people in the store.

## *Conversation C*

S1. I spent the afternoon shopping for clothes.

S2. How did you make out?

S1. Well, I found an excellent raincoat, and I bought some shoes.

S2. That reminds me that I have to go shopping soon.

## *Conversation D*

S1. Where did you buy your coat?

S2. I bought it at the Fifth Avenue Store-but a long time ago.

S1. About how much did it cost?

S2. At the moment, I've forgotten how much it cost.

## *Conversation E*

S1. Why did you choose the green one?

S2. To ten the truth, I really didn't have much choice in my size.

S1. Excuse my asking, but how much did you pay for it?

S2. It was on sale, and I paid only forty-five dollars.

## 38. SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. What would you like to see?  
S2. I'd like to see your overcoats, please.  
S1. What kind of overcoats would you like to see?  
S2. I'd like to see your winter overcoats-probably wool.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. I'd like to look at your sweaters, if I could.  
S2. Certainly. Any particular style?  
S1. Could I see some of the new styles, please?  
S2. Of course. Please step right this way.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. I'm interested in seeing your summer suits.  
S2. What color did you have in mind?  
S1. White, or some light color, I think  
S2. Step over to this other-room with me, would you please?

### *Conversation D*

- S1. That jacket you have on now seems to fit you very well.  
S2. What kind of material is this?  
S1. It's a mixture-cotton and wool.  
S2. I'm not sure it's heavy enough for the fall weather.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Here's a very popular kind of sport coat-the most recent thing.  
S2. I notice there isn't much padding in the shoulders.  
S1. No. It has a natural shoulder line.  
S2. I like the narrow lapels and the stitching on them.

## 39. ASKING ABOUT PRICES / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. How much does this pen cost?  
S2. I beg your pardon.  
S3. How much is this pen cost?  
S4. It's four dollars and fifty cents.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. How much is this leather billfold?  
S2. It's five twenty-five  
S3. Does that include the tax?  
S4. It's five forty four including tax.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. This briefcase costs five fifty.  
S2. That's fine. I'll take it.  
S1. Will there be anything else?  
S2. I don't believe so; thank you.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. We're having a sale on leather goods today  
S2. Are office supplies on sale too?  
S3. Yes. Prices have been reduced from 20 to 40 percent.  
S4. I notice the sale prices are marked in red ink.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. How much are these things all together?  
S2. Let's see. That'll be twenty-one fifty.  
S1. I'd like to change them to my account, please.  
S2. Fine. Could you give me your name & address

### *Exercise 1 / Lines A1, B1, C1 /*

- |                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| How much does this pen cost?        | It cost two dollars.  |
| How much do these-bookends cost?    | They cost two dollars |
| How much does that notebook cost?   | It costs two dollars. |
| How much do those brushes cost?     | They cost two dollars |
| How much does this stationery cost? | It costs two dollars. |

### *Exercise 2 / Lines A4, B4, C1 /*

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| It's four fifty-nine.     | It costs four dollars and fifty-nine cents.   |
| They're two fifty.        | They cost two dollars and fifty cents.        |
| It's seven eighty-five.   | It costs seven dollars and eighty-five cents. |
| They're nine sixty-seven. | They cost nine dollars and sixty-seven cents. |
| They're twelve seventy.   | They cost twelve dollars and seventy cents.   |
| It's twenty-five fifty.   | It costs twenty-five dollars and fifty cents. |

**Exercise 3 / Lines A4, B4, C1 /**

**What's ten fifty plus forty-nine?**

**It's ten ninety-nine.**

**What's two seventy-five plus ten?**

**It's two eighty-five.**

**What's six thirty-nine plus twenty?**

**It's six fifty-nine.**

**What's three eighty plus eighteen?**

**It's three ninety-eight.**

**What's sixty-nine plus eight?**

**It's seventy seven.**

**What's one twenty plus eight twenty? It's nine forty.**

**Exercise 4 / Line D 1 /**

**We're having a sale on leather goods today.**

**summer clothing**

**We're having a sale on summer clothing today.**

**home furniture**

**We're having a sale on home furniture today.**

**kitchen items**

**We're having a sale on kitchen items today.**

**household supplies**

**We're having a sale on household supplies today.**

**dinnerware**

**We're having a sale on dinnerware today.**

## **40. HOW MUCH DOES IT COST / CONVERSATIONS**

---

#### Conversation A

- S1. How much are your potatoes, sir?  
S2. Twenty-five cents a pound.  
S1. How much would five pounds cost?  
S2. Five pounds would be a dollar and a quarter.

#### Conversation B

- S1. What does that gold pin cost?  
S2. It's twenty-one dollars plus tax.  
S1. How much for the small one next to it?  
S2. That one costs twelve fifty.

#### Conversation C

- S1. What's the regular price for that refrigerator?  
S2. The list price is two hundred forty.  
S1. Are you selling it at a discount?  
S2. Yes. The discount price is one ninety-nine.

#### Conversation D

- S1. What are you asking for that antique mirror?  
S2. That's one hundred fifty dollars.  
S1. Isn't that rather expensive?  
S2. Not really. Mirrors of that type are quite rare.

#### Conversation E

- S1. What would it cost to have this chair repaired?  
S2. I'd estimate sixty to seventy dollars  
S3. How much would it cost to replace it with a new one?  
S2. Probably around a hundred dollars.

## **41. MONEY PROBLEMS / CONVERSATIONS**

---

#### Conversation A

- S1. Can you come along with us tomorrow?  
S2. I think I can borrow enough money to go.

S1. Why couldn't you go last Thursday?  
S2. Because I couldn't afford it.

#### Conversation B

S1. How much money do you have?  
S2. Not very much.  
S1. Do you have many dollar bills?  
S2. Not very many, I'm afraid.

#### Conversation C

S1. You look upset about something.  
S2. I think I've lost my money.  
S1. Oh, that's what's bothering you.  
S2. It's a good reason to be upset, isn't it?

#### Conversation D

S1. Are you sure you lost your money?  
S2. I'm sure did.  
S1. Would you please look again?  
S2. I will, but I'm sure it's not here.

#### Conversation E

S1. How many pennies did you have in your bank?  
S2. I had exactly five hundred of them.  
S1. What did you do with them?  
S2. I put them in rolls of fifty pennies each.

## 42. TALKING ABOUT MONEY / CONVERSATIONS

---

#### *Conversation A*

S1. Have you made very much money this year?  
S2. Not an awful lot.  
S1. How hard have you tried?  
S2. Not as hard as I could have, I'm afraid.

***Conversation B***

- S1. How much did you make this week?  
S2. Sixty two dollars  
S1. Is that your take-home pay?  
S2. Yes, it is.

***Conversation C***

- S1 . I've got to pay a lot of bills.  
S2 And I've got to pay my rent today.  
S1. Money goes very fast these days, doesn't it?  
S2. It certainly does.

***Conversation D***

- S1. Did you sell your car.?  
S2. Yes. I sold it my Friend Bob.  
S1. Did you put the money in the bank?  
S2. I deposited part of it and spent the rest.

***Conversation E***

- S1. Do you have an account at that bank?  
S2. I've got a special checking account  
S1. How much do you have to keep in the account?  
S2. There's no minimum.

## **43. LENDING AND BORROWING MONEY / CONVERSATIONS**

---

***Conversation A***

- S1. Could you lend me a dollar until tomorrow?  
S2. I can if you have change for a five  
S1. I wish I did, but I don't  
S2. Well, we can get it changed easily.

***Conversation B***

S1. I need about ten dollars.  
S2. What do you need it for?  
S3. I need it for books and supplies.  
S2. O.K. I'll end it to you.

*Conversation C*

S1. Could I borrow some money from you for a few days?  
S2. How much do you need? .  
S1. Could you spare four or five dollars?  
S2. Yes, but I'll need the money myself before next week.

*Conversation D*

S1. What did you need the money for yesterday?  
S2. I wanted it for a new suit.  
S1. Did you get the money?  
S2. Yes. I borrowed it from a friend.

*Conversation E*

S1. How much change have you got?  
S2. Two quarters, two nickels, and a dime.  
S1. That's not enough to change this dollar bill.  
S2. I'll lend you all of this change if you want *it*.

## **44.AT THE POST OFFICE / CONVERSATIONS**

---

# 45. AT THE GROCERY STORE / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. How much are the potatoes?  
S2. I beg your pardon.  
S1. How much do the potatoes cost?  
S2. Fifteen cents a pound.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. I'd like a bag of onions and a jar of olives.  
S2. Do you need fruit-apples, lemons, plums?  
S1. Perhaps a box of cherries and a bunch of grapes.  
S2. I'll put all this in a box with your other groceries.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. I forgot to buy some rice.  
S2. How much do you want?  
S1. Would you please get me two pounds?  
S2. All right. A two-pound bag.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. Don't you need milk or cream?  
S2. Yes. Let's get a pint of cream and two quarts of milk.  
S1. We can get a two-quart container.  
S2. Let's get some sour cream too.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Please give me two bottles of milk.  
S2. All of our milk is in cartons.  
S1. Cartons are all right, but I prefer bottles.  
S2. Cartons are more convenient, and there's a deposit on bottles.

## 46. SHOPPING FOR GROCERIES / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. What do you call a big grocery store like this?  
S2. It's called a "supermarket"  
S1. It's convenient to see everything and pick out what you want.  
S2. Having these carts to put things in is convenient too.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. How about fish tonight-salmon, tuna fish, trout?  
S2. I notice the clams and oysters are fresh today.  
S1. That sounds very good.  
S2 Let's also get a pork roast or turkey for tomorrow.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Now we have sugar, salt, pepper, and flour.  
S2. We also need mustard, vinegar, and cinnamon.  
S1. I'll get those while you get the cabbage and celery.  
S2. Fine. I'll meet you at the check-out counter.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. *Would* you please get me a bag of sugar?  
S2. Do you want two or five pounds?  
S1. A two-pound bag will be all right.  
S2. O.K. I'll meet you at the canned-food counter.

### *Conversation E*

- S1 How many eggs should we get?  
S2. Two dozen should be enough.  
S1. How much butter do you think we need?  
S2. One pound is enough, don't you think?

## 47. IDENTIFYING PEOPLE / CONVERSATIONS

---

**Conversation A**

- S1. Are you Dr. Taylor?  
S2. No. That tall fellow is Dr. Taylor.  
S1. Do you mean the one over there with glasses?  
S2. Yes. The one with brown hair.

**Conversation B**

- S1. Who's that very handsome man?  
S2. What did you say?  
S1. Do you know who that man over there is?  
S2. If you mean the thin, rather dark man, that's Mr. Walker.

**Conversation C**

- S1. Do you recognize the girl talking to Mr. Brown?  
S2. Of course I know the girl he's talking to.  
S1. Well then, whom is he talking to?  
S2. That's Dorothy Jones, Mary's good friend.

**Conversation D**

- S1. What's that man's name-the man that's holding the briefcase?  
S2. I know, but I can't remember it right now.  
S1. Where does he come from-Greece or Turkey perhaps?  
S2. One of the two, I think.

**Conversation E**

- S1. Do you know the man over there by the door?  
S2. I do, but I can't remember his name at the moment.  
S1. Isn't he a famous musician?  
S2. He's either a musician or a painter.

**Exercise 1 / Line A1 /**

- |                     |                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Are you Mrs. Brown? | No, I'm not. I'm not Mrs. Brown.  |
| Are you a teacher?  | No, I'm not. I'm not a teacher.   |
| Are you lawyers?    | No, we aren't. We aren't lawyers. |
| Are you doctors?    | No, we aren't. We aren't doctors. |
| Are you an artist?  | No, I'm not. I'm not an artist.   |

**Exercise 2 / Line A2 /**

That tall fellow. is Mr. Taylor.

short  
with brown hair

That short fellow is Mr. Taylor.  
That short fellow with brown hair is Mr. Taylor.

gray  
thin fellow  
That fellow with glasses

That short fellow with gray hair is Mr. Taylor.  
That thin fellow with gray hair is Mr. Taylor.  
That fellow with glasses is Mr. Taylor.

*Exercise 3 / Lines B2 and B3 /*

Who's that man?  
Who are those men?  
Who's that woman?  
Who are those women? .  
Who's that thin fellow?  
Who are those two girls?

Do you know who that man is?  
Do you know who those men are?  
Do you know who that woman is?  
Do you know who those women are?  
Do you know who that thin fellow is?  
Do you know who those two girls are?

*Exercise 4 / Line C1 /*

Do you recognize the girl talking to Mr. Brown?

standing by the door  
walking across the room  
carrying the blue purse  
wearing the yellow dress  
shaking hands with Mr. Brown

Do you recognize the girl standing by the door? .  
Do you recognize the girl walking across the room?  
Do you recognize the girl carrying the blue purse?  
Do you recognize the girl wearing the yellow dress?  
Do you recognize the girl shaking hands with Mr. Brown?

*Exercise 5/ Line C2 /*

He's talking to a girl.  
He's looking at a girl.  
He's speaking about a girl.  
He's standing beside a girl.  
He's leaving with a girl.  
He's listening to a girl.

I know the girl he's talking to.  
I know the girl he's looking at.  
I know the girl he's speaking about  
I know the girl he's standing beside.  
I know the girl he's leaving with.  
I know the girl he's listening to.

*Exercise 6 / Line C3 /*

He's talking to a girl.  
He's listening to a girl.  
He's looking at a girl.  
He's standing beside a girl.  
He's speaking about a girl.  
He's leaving with a girl.

Whom is he talking to?  
Whom is he listening to?  
Whom is he looking at?  
Whom is he standing beside?  
Whom is he speaking about?  
Whom is he leaving with?

*Exercise 7 / Line C3 /*

Whom is he speaking about?  
Whom is he leaving with?  
Whom is he looking at?  
Whom is he listening to?  
Whom is he standing beside?

Do you know whom he's speaking about?  
Do you know whom he's leaving with?  
Do you know whom he's looking at?  
Do you know whom he's listening to?  
Do you know whom he's standing beside?

*Exercise 8 / Lines E3 and E4 /*

He plays music for people.  
He types things.  
He runs a farm.  
He instructs students.  
He takes photographs.

He's a musician  
He's a typist.  
He's a farmer.  
He's an instructor  
He's a photographer.

He sings songs professionally.  
He translates things.  
He collects stamps.  
He organizes groups for the union.  
He analyzes legal matters.  
He supervises factory workers.

He's a professional singer.  
He's a translator  
He's a stamp collector  
He's a union organizer.  
He's a legal analyst.  
He's a factory supervisor

## 48. IMMEDIATE FAMILY AND RELATIVES/ CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. How old is your son?

S2. He's seventeen years old.

S1. Is your daughter older or younger than your son?

S2. Younger. She's only fifteen.

***Conversation B***

**S1. Have you got many relatives here?**

**S2. Yes. An aunt and an uncle and four grandparents.**

**S1. Do your aunt and uncle have children?**

**S2. Yes. I have three cousins-two boys and a girl.**

***Conversation C***

**S1. Do you have a picture of your family?**

**S2. Yes, I've got one right here.**

**S1. You have a very nice family. Thank you.**

**S2. Thank you.**

***Conversation D***

**S1. Jim looks like his father.**

**S2. Do you and your father look alike?**

**S1. There's a little resemblance but not much.**

**S2. I don't look like anyone at all in my family.**

***Conversation E***

**S1. How's your family?**

**S2. They're all fine, thanks.**

**S1. Are your niece and nephew still here?**

**S2. Yes, they are. They're still visiting me.**

# 49. IDENTIFYING THINGS / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. Which house is your house?  
S2. Ours is the last one on the block.  
S1. Is yours the red one or the blue one?  
S2. The blue one on the right side of the street.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. What's the name of that book John referred to?  
S2. It's slipped my mind for the moment.  
S1. Who did he say was the author?  
S2. Some man whose name starts with an m.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. Which one of these are you going to choose?  
S2. I like the red one with the blue stripes.  
S1. The one over there with black edges is nice too.  
S2. But the one we looked at first may be the best choice.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. The car over there by the streetlight is John's.  
S2. Which one do you mean-the old one or the new red one?  
S1. Neither. I mean the streetlight on your left.  
S2. Oh. Then the one with the convertible top must be his.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. What's the name of that thing with the strange shape?  
S2. I beg your pardon.  
S1. Can you tell me what the-name of that thing over there is?  
S2. Sorry. I don't know myself.

## *Exercise 1 Lines A1-A4 /*

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Our house is the last one.   | Ours is the last one.   |
| Their house is the last one. | Theirs is the last one. |
| His house is the last one.   | His is the last one.    |
| My house is the last one.    | Mine is the last one.   |
| Her house is the last one.   | Hers is the last one.   |

## *Exercise 2 / Lines A1-A4 /*

- |                               |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| His books are the red ones.   | His are the red ones    |
| Their books are the red ones. | Theirs are the red ones |
| Your books are the red ones.  | Yours are the red ones  |
| Her books are the red ones.   | Hers are the red ones.  |
| My books are the red ones.    | Mine are the red ones   |

**Exercise 3 / Lines A2 and A4 /**

Ours is the last one on the right side.

left  
next to last  
Theirs  
first-  
other

Ours is the last one on the left side.  
Ours is the next to last one on the left side.  
Theirs is the next to last one on the left side.  
Theirs is the first one on the left side.  
Theirs is the first one on the other side.

**Exercise 4 / Lines A1, C1, C4, D2 /**

Which of them is the best?

the most practical  
the cheapest  
the most expensive  
the prettiest  
the most stylish

Which of them is the most practical?  
Which of them is the cheapest?  
Which of them is the most expensive?  
Which of them is the prettiest?  
Which of them is the most stylish?

**Exercise 5 / Line B1 /**

What's the name of that book he referred to?

inquired about  
commented on  
spoke about  
objected to

What's the name of that book he inquired about?  
What's the name of that book he commented on?  
What's the name of that book he spoke about?  
What's the name of that book he objected to?

**Exercise 6 / Line C1 /**

Are you going to choose one?  
Have you chosen one?  
Did you choose one?  
Should you choose one?  
Will you choose one?  
Had you chosen one?

Which one are you going to choose?  
Which one have you chosen?  
Which one did you choose?  
Which one should you choose?  
Which one will you choose?  
Which one had you chosen?

**Exercise 7 / Line C2 /**

I like the one with blue stripes.  
I like the one with black edges.  
I like the one with green sides  
I like the one with yellow squares  
I like the one with orange flowers.

I like the one that has blue stripes.  
I like the one that has black edges.  
I like the one that has green sides.  
I like the one that has yellow squares  
I like the one that has orange flowers.

**Exercise 8 / Line C4 /**

We looked at that one.  
We examined that one.  
We talked about that one.  
We chose that one.  
We picked out that one.  
We selected that one.

The one 'we looked at may be the best.  
The one we examined may be the best.  
The one we talked about may be the best.  
The one we chose may be the best.  
The one we picked out may be the best.  
The one we selected may be the best

**Exercise 9 / Line E3 /**

**Can you tell me what the name of that is?**

**Can you guess  
Can't you guess  
Do you know  
Don't you know**

**Can you guess what the name of that is?  
Can't you guess what the name of that is?  
Do you know what the name of that is?  
Don't you know what the name of that is?**

## 50. SENDING AND RECEIVING LETTERS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Are you writing a letter?  
S2. Yes. I'm to my family.  
S1. Do you write letters very often?  
S2. Yes. I write five or six letters a week.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Do You write letters very often  
S2. No. I hate to write letters.  
S1. It takes a lot of time.  
S2. It sure does.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Did Robert get a letter?  
S2. He got one yesterday.  
S1. Does he get many letters?  
S2. Yes. He gets some every day.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Charles wrote me a long letter.  
S2. When did he write to you?  
S1. He sent the letter to me about a week ago.  
S2. He hasn't even sent me a postcard yet!

### *Conversation E*

- S1. We wrote to Mary's sister last week.  
S2. Has she written you yet?  
S1. No, she hasn't.  
S2. She wrote me a few days ago.

## 51. MORE ABOUT LETTERS / CONVERSATIONS

---

***Conversation A***

- S1. Have you written to your brother yet?  
S2. Yes, but I haven't mailed the letter yet.  
S1. I went to the post office half an hour ago.  
S2. Why didn't you tell me?

***Conversation B***

- S1. Did your friend in San Francisco write to you?  
S2. Yes. I got a letter from her on Thursday.  
S1. What did she have to say?  
S2. She said the city was interesting and pretty.

***Conversation C***

- S1. Did you write a reply to Peter's letter?  
S2. Yes. I wrote one on Friday.  
S1. Did you mention his last letter to you?  
S2. Yes. I said I'd enjoyed his letter a lot.

***Conversation D***

- S1. What are you writing?  
S2. I'm writing a thank-you note to the Smiths.  
S1. What are you doing that for?  
S2. I had dinner with them, and it's customary to write a thank you note.

***Conversation E***

- S1. I wrote a letter to them applying for a job.  
S2. Was it hard to write your letter of application?  
S1. Yes. I wanted to sound modest but also mention my qualifications.  
S2. It's always hard to write about yourself.

## 52. GETTING CHANGE/ CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Have you got any change?  
S2. What do you need?  
S1. I need a change for a quarter.  
S2. Here are two dimes and five pennies.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Can you change this five-dollar bill?  
S2. I'm sorry. I don't have change.  
S1. What Should I do?  
S2. Go to the cashier's desk.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Can you change this ten dollar bill?  
S2. How do you want it  
S1. A five and five one's please  
S2. Here you are

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Do you have a change for dollar bill?  
S2. Just a minute and I'll see  
S1. I need some quarters.  
S2. Yes. I can change it give you two quarters.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. This is a Change machine.  
S2. Do you really get money from it?  
S1. Sure. Just put a fifty-cent piece in that slot.  
S2. It works! I've got quarter, two dimes, and a nickel.

### *Exercise 1 / Line D1 /*

Do you have change for a dime?

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| a quarter          | Do you have change for a quarter?          |
| a half dollar      | Do you have change for a half dollar?      |
| a dollar           | Do you have change for a dollar?           |
| a five-dollar bill | Do you have change for a five-dollar bill? |

### *Exercise 2 / Lines A1 and D 1 /*

Have you got change for a dime?

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| a half dollar      | Have you got change for a half dollar?      |
| a quarter          | Have you got change for a quarter?          |
| a five-dollar bill | Have you got change for a five-dollar bill? |
| a fifty-cent piece | Have you got change for a fifty-cent piece? |

**Exercise 3 / Lines A1 and D1 /**

Have you got change for a dime.	I wonder if you've got change for a dime
Have you got change for a quarter?	I wonder if you've got change for a quarter
Have you got change for a fifty cents	I wonder if you've got change for fifty cents.
Have you got change for a five	I wonder if you've got change for a five.

**Exercise 4 / Lines B1 and C1 /**

Can you change this dime?

fifty-cent piece	Can you change this fifty-cent piece?
quarter	Can you change this quarter?
ten-dollar bill	Can you change this ten-dollar bill?
half dollar	Can you change this half dollar?
five-dollar bill	Can you change this five-dollar bill?

**Exercise 5 / Lines A3 and A4 /**

I need change for a nickel.	Here are five pennies.
I need change for a dime.	Here are ten pennies.
I need change for a quarter.	Here are twenty-five pennies
I need change for a half dollar.	Here are fifty pennies.
I need change for a dollar.	Here are one hundred pennies.

## 53. AMERICAN MONEY AND PRICES / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation Drill A

S1. I understand the American money system well.

S2. Then how many (A) are there in a (B) ?

S1. There are (C), aren't there?

S2. That's exactly right. There are (C)

(A)	(B)	(C)
cents	nickel	five
cents	dime	ten
nickels	dime	two
cents	quarter	twenty-five
nickels	quarter	five
quarters	half dollar	two
dimes	half dollar	five
quarters	dollar	four
nickels	dollar	twenty

### Conversation Drill B

S1. What do you need today?

S2. I'd like (A)

S1. Today (B)

S2. That'll be all right, thanks.

(A)	(B)
a pound of butter	butter is 65¢ a pound
a quart of milk	milk is 38¢ a quart
a loaf of bread	bread is 20¢ a loaf
a jar of jelly	jelly is 36¢ a jar
a can of tuna fish	tuna is 85¢ a can
a box of cookies	cookies are 42¢ a box
a pint of cream	cream is 41¢ a pint
a dozen eggs	eggs are 87¢ a dozen

# 54. WHAT'S IT LIKE OUTSIDE? / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

S1. Is it, raining now?

S2. Yes. it is. It's raining very hard.

S1. Does it rain very much in this area?

S2. Yes It rains a lot in the spring and fall.

## *Conversation B*

S1. How is the weather?

S2. It's raining outside now.

S1. Is it raining very hard?

S2. No, it isn't. It's just sprinkling.

## *Conversation C*

S1. What's the weather like outside?

S2. I think it's going to rain.

S1. It was nice a few hours ago.

S2. It was beautiful, wasn't it?

## *Conversation D*

S1. How's the weather today?

S2. It's quite cold and damp.

S1. How are the winters here in general?

S2. They're usually rather mild.

## *Conversation E*

S1. Is it raining outside now?

S2. Yes, it is, and it's quite cold.

S1. I think I'll stay home today.

S2. I certainly wish I could too.

## *Exercise 1 / Line B2 /*

It's raining outside now.

Sprinkling  
Snowing  
Hailing  
getting windy

It's sprinkling outside now.  
It's snowing outside now.  
It's hailing outside now.  
It's getting windy outside now

## *Exercise 2 / Lines A1 and B2 /*

It's raining now.

Yesterday  
Tomorrow  
several times this week  
a great deal in this season

It rained yesterday.  
It's going to rain tomorrow  
It's rained several times this week.  
It rains a great deal in this season.

*Exercise 3 / Lines A1 and B2 /*

It's raining now.  
It rained yesterday.  
It's going to rain tomorrow.  
It's rained many times this week.  
It rains a great deal in this season

Is it raining now?  
Did it rain yesterday?  
Is it going to rain tomorrow?  
Has it rained many times this Week?  
Does it rain a great deal in this season?

*Exercise 4 / Line D2 /*

It's quite cold and damp.

cloudy and gray  
windy and cold  
warm and humid  
hot and sticky

It's quite cloudy and gray.  
It's quite windy and cold.  
It's quite warm and humid.  
It's quite hot and sticky.

*Exercise 5 / Line D4 /*

The winters are usually rather mild here.

generally  
very wet  
the summers  
almost always

The winters are generally rather mild here.  
The winters are generally very wet here.  
The summers are generally very wet here.  
The summers are almost always very wet here.

# 55. TALKING ABOUT THE WEATHER / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. It was hot yesterday.  
S2. But it's quite cool today.  
S1. Yes. I'm wearing sweater under my coat.  
S2. I'm going to put on a jacket.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. It's freezing today!  
S2. It's worse than yesterday.  
S1. How cold is it?  
S2. It's ten below.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. What cold weather this is!  
S2. It certainly is.  
S3. What's the temperature?  
S4. It's five above.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. You've seen a hurricane, haven't you?  
S2. Once, a long time ago.  
S1. Does it ever snow in your country?  
S2. Only a few times a year.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Do you like the weather in this part of the country?  
S2. Not really, but I'm adjusted to it now.  
S1. Is the weather different in your Country  
S2. Yes: It never gets as cold there as it does here.

## *Exercise 1 / Lines A1 and A2 /*

It was hot yesterday.  
It was cold yesterday.  
It was warm yesterday.  
It was cool yesterday.  
It was chilly yesterday.  
It was damp yesterday.

It was quite hot, wasn't it?  
It was quite cold, wasn't it?  
It was quite warm, wasn't it?  
It was quite cool, wasn't it?  
It was quite chilly, wasn't it?  
It was quite damp, wasn't it?

## *Exercise 2 / Line A4 /*

I'm going to put on a sweater.

a wool shirt  
a jacket  
Gloves  
an overcoat  
overshoes

I'm going to put on a wool shirt.  
I'm going to put on a jacket.  
I'm going to put on gloves.  
I'm going to put on an overcoat.  
I'm going to put on overshoes.

**Exercise 3 / Line B2 /**

It's worse than yesterday.

better  
hotter  
colder  
Warmer  
cooler

It's better than yesterday.  
It's hotter than yesterday.  
It's colder than yesterday.  
It's warmer than yesterday.  
It's cooler than yesterday

**Exercise 4 / Line B2 /**

It's worse than yesterday.  
It's hotter than yesterday.  
It's colder than yesterday.  
It's warmer than yesterday.  
It's cooler than yesterday.

It's the worst day in a long time  
It's, the hottest day in a long time  
It's the coldest day in a long time.  
It's the warmest day in a long time.  
It's the coolest day in a long time.

**Exercise 5 / Line C1 /**

What cold weather this is!

Humid  
Hot  
Cloudy  
Damp  
Sticky

What humid weather this is!  
What hot weather this is!  
What cloudy weather this is!  
What damp weather this is!  
What sticky weather this is!

## 56. WEATHER CONDITIONS / CONVERSATIONS

---

**Exercise 1 / Line A1 /**

It's a nice day, isn't it?

fine  
beautiful  
wonderful  
terrible  
awful

It's a fine day, isn't it?  
It's a beautiful, day, isn't it?  
It's a wonderful day, isn't it?  
It's a terrible day, isn't it?  
It's an awful day, isn't it?

*Exercise 2 / Lines A1 and C1 /*

The weather is good today.  
The weather is fine today.  
The weather is nice today.  
The weather is wonderful today.  
The weather is beautiful today.  
The weather is unusual today.

It is good, isn't it?  
It is fine, isn't it?  
It is nice, isn't it?  
It is wonderful, isn't it?  
It is beautiful, isn't it?  
It is unusual, isn't it?

*Exercise 3 / Lines A2 and E1 /*

It's warm and sunny for a change.

damp and chilly  
cloudy and gray  
hot and hazy  
cool and clear  
windy and cold

It's damp and chilly for a change.  
It's cloudy and gray for a change.  
It's hot and hazy for a change.  
It's cool and clear for a change.  
It's windy and cold for a change.

*Exercise 4 / Lines B1 and C2 /*

It's warm today.  
It's chilly today.  
It's damp today.  
It's windy today.  
It's cool today.  
It's hot today.

It's a little too warm for me.  
It's a little too chilly for me.  
It's a little too damp for me.  
It's a little too windy for me.  
It's a little too cool for me.  
It's a little too hot for me.

*Exercise 5 / Line D1 /*

Is it cold outside?  
Is it cloudy outside?  
Is it warm outside?  
Is it chilly outside?  
Is it windy outside?

I wonder if it's cold outside.  
I wonder if it's cloudy outside.  
I wonder if it's warm outside.  
I wonder if it's chilly outside.  
I wonder if it's windy outside.

## 57. A LOOK AT THE WEATHER / CONVERSATIONS

---

*Conversation Drill A*

S1. What's the weather like outside?

S2. Right at the moment (A)  
S1. This morning, it was (B)  
S2. And tonight, it'll probably change again.

(A)  
it's raining a little  
the wind is blowing hard  
it's pouring  
the sun is shining  
it's clearing up a little  
the rain is stopping  
it's getting foggy  
the snow is getting heavy

(B)  
a little cloudy  
kind of damp  
rather hazy  
quite cool  
very dark  
windy and cold  
really quite clear  
sunny and warm

### *Conversation Drill B*

S1. The weather isn't very good today, is it?  
S2. No, it certainly isn't.  
S1. It's (A)  
S2. It always seems (B)

(A)  
too damp and chilly  
getting kind of hazy  
very cloudy and gray  
getting even more humid  
quite windy and cold  
getting icy on the roads  
too hot and sticky  
becoming rather dark

(B)  
colder when it's damp  
gloomy when it's hazy  
gloomier when it's cloudy  
uncomfortable when it's humid  
worse when it's windy  
strange when there's ice on the roads  
hotter when it's humid  
depressing when it's so dark

## 58. USING EXPRESSIONS OF TIME/ CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. Were you at home last night?  
S2. No. But I was at home the night before last  
S1. Will you be at home tomorrow night?

S2. No, but I'll be at home the next night

*Conversation B*

S1. Didn't your friends leave the week before last?

S2. Right. They left just two weeks ago.

S1. Will they get back next week?

S2. Yes. According to them, they'll arrive a week from today.

*Conversation C*

S1. Did Mary get back last Week?

S2. Yes. She got back on Thursday.

S1. How long was she away?

S2. She was out of town for ten days.

*Conversation D*

S1. When did George arrive in town?

S2. He flew in last Thursday afternoon.

S1. John has been here since last Thursday too.

S2. Both of them plan to leave the day after tomorrow.

*Conversation E*

S1. How long have you been here?

S2. I've been here for two months.

S1. How often do you get here?

S2. I get to this city about twice a year

*Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

Were you at home yesterday?

yesterday afternoon

last night

the day before yesterday

the night before last

two nights ago

last Thursday night

Were you at home yesterday afternoon?

Were you at home last night?

Were you at home the day before yesterday?

Were you at home the night before last?

Were you at home two nights ago?

Were you at home last Thursday night?

*Exercise 2 / Line A3 /*

Will you be at home tomorrow?

tomorrow afternoon

tomorrow night

the day after tomorrow

a week from today

next Friday night

Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?

Will you be at home tomorrow night?

Will you be at home the day after tomorrow?

Will you be at home a week from today?

Will you be at home next Friday night?

*Exercise 3 / Lines B1 and C1 /*

Didn't your friends get back last week?

Last Monday

Didn't your friends get back last Monday?

a week ago  
a week ago today  
two weeks ago  
the week before last

Didn't your friends get back a week ago?  
Didn't your friends get back a week ago today?  
Didn't your friends get back two weeks ago?  
Didn't your friends get back the week before last?

*Exercise 4 / Line B3 /*

Will they get back next week?

next Tuesday  
a week from now  
a week from today  
two weeks from now  
the week after next

Will they get back next Tuesday?  
Will they get back a week from now?  
Will they get back a week from today?  
Will they get back two weeks from now?  
Will they get back the week after next?

*Exercise 5 / Line C4/*

She was out of town for ten days.

a week  
a week and a half  
several weeks  
quite a while  
a couple of months

She was out of town for a week.  
She was out of town for a week and a half.  
She was out of town for several weeks.  
She was out of town for quite a while.  
She was out of town for a couple of months.

*Exercise 6*

My brother met them on Tuesday.

at two o'clock  
see  
last night  
telephone  
an hour ago  
consult  
in the evening  
advise  
yesterday morning  
Help  
last Tuesday  
pay  
the day before last

My brother met them at two o'clock.  
My brother saw them at two o'clock.  
My brother saw them last night.  
My brother telephoned them last night.  
My brother telephoned them an hour ago.  
My brother consulted them an hour ago.  
My brother consulted them in the evening.  
My brother advised them in the evening.  
My brother advised them yesterday morning.  
My brother helped them yesterday Morning.  
My brother helped them last Tuesday. !  
My brother paid them last Tuesday.  
My brother paid them the day before last.

*Exercise 7*

They're going to help you tonight.

in the spring  
Instruct  
tomorrow night  
Visit  
on October' twentieth  
He  
next week  
Assist  
the day after tomorrow

They're going to help you in the spring.  
They're going to instruct you in the spring.  
They're going to instruct you tomorrow night.  
They're going to visit you tomorrow night.  
They're going to visit you on October twentieth.  
He's going to visit you on October twentieth.  
He's going to visit you next week.  
He's going to assist you next week.  
He's going to assist you the day after tomorrow.

Meet  
We  
Invite  
in March  
Supervise  
on March eighteenth

He's going to meet you the day after tomorrow.  
We're going to meet you the day after tomorrow.  
We're going to invite you the day after tomorrow.  
We're going to invite you in March.  
We're going to supervise you in March.  
We're going to supervise you on March eighteenth.

## 59. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME/ CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### *Conversation Drill A*

S1. When will Mr. Brown arrive in the city?

S2. He'll arrive here (A)

S1. His wife got here (B)

S2. I didn't know that.

(A)

next month  
on the twenty fifth  
a week from now  
at four o'clock  
The day after tomorrow  
Two hours from now  
In the evening

(B)

last month  
in August  
a week ago  
at twelve fifteen.  
the day before yesterday  
two hours ago  
during the afternoon

Tomorrow night

last night

**Conversation Drill B**

S1. How long will you be away?

S2. Probably (A)

S1. Have you made all the arrangements?

S2. Yes. I'm going to leave (B)

(A)

until the summer

for six months

up to November

twenty or twenty one days

six months or more

a long time

until July fourth

not for long

(B)

before the holiday

on the twenty fifth

during the spring

in September

on September eighteenth

after the ceremony

next week

some time next month

## 60. DATES AND PERIODS OF TIME/ CONVERSATIONS

---

**Conversation A**

S1. How long have you worked in this office?

S2. I've worked here since March.

S1. How long ago did you finish school?

S2. I finished school three years ago.

**Conversation B**

S1. Didn't you study English in school?

S2. Yes, but that was many years ago.

S1. How many years ago was it?

S2. at least six or seven.

**Conversation C**

S1. Did your friends arrive here in the fall?

S2. Yes. they did. They got here in October.

S1. Do you know the exact date they arrived?

S2. I do. They got back on October eleventh.

*Conversation D*

S1. Have you been living here very long?

S2. I've only been here since last spring.

S1. Are you going to stay until Christmas?

S2. No. I'll probably leave for France in a month or two.

*Conversation E*

S1. *I worked* on my report until midnight last night.

S2. Do you expect to finish the work by tomorrow night?

S1. Well, I certainly can't finish it before that time.

S2. You'd better get someone to help you for a few hours today then.

*Exercise 1 / Line A2 /*

I've worked here since March.

March fifteenth  
last April  
last fall  
1964  
the holidays

I've worked here since March fifteenth.  
I've worked here since last April.  
I've worked here since last fall.  
I've worked here since 1964.  
I've worked here since the holidays.

*Exercise 2 / Line A2 /*

I've worked here for six months.

several years  
more than a year  
a month and a half  
quite a while

I've worked here for several years.  
I've worked here for more than a year.  
I've worked here for a month and a half.  
I've worked here for quite a while

*Exercise 3 / Line A2 /*

I worked in London for four years.

a year and a half  
eighteen weeks  
several months  
a long time

I worked in London for a year and a half.  
I worked in London for eighteen weeks.  
I worked in London for several months.  
I worked in London for a long time.

*Exercise 4 / Line A2 /*

I started to work here two months ago.

a couple of years  
several weeks  
quite a while  
a long time

I started to work here a couple of Years ago.  
I started to work here several weeks ago.  
I started to work here quite a while ago.  
I started to work here a long time ago.

*Exercise 5 / Line D3 /*

I'm going to stay here until August tenth.

for two weeks  
until June or July  
for a month or two  
until school starts

I'm going to stay here for two weeks.  
I'm going to stay here until June or July.  
I'm going to stay here for a month or two.  
I'm going to stay here until school starts.

### *Exercise 6*

He's worked there since September.

Two months  
since 1963.  
two years  
January first  
Several hours.  
last winter.  
ten o'clock.  
December.  
three months.  
July 18, 1964  
half an hour.  
a long time.  
this morning.  
some time.  
quite a while

He's worked there for two months.  
He's worked there for Since 1963  
He's worked there for two years.  
He's worked there since January first.  
He's worked there for Several hours  
He's worked there since last winter  
He's worked there for since ten o' clock  
He's worked there since December  
He's worked there for three months  
He's worked there since July 18,1964  
He's worked there for an half an hour  
He's worked there for a long time  
He's worked there since this morning  
He's worked there for some time  
He's worked there for quite a while.

### *Exercise 7*

They studied there for ten weeks.

October.  
one year.  
1965  
two hours  
The spring  
A month  
several weeks.  
the winter.  
1963 and 64  
An hour or two  
The fall semester  
A whole month  
A short time.  
June and July.  
quite a while.

They studied there in October  
They studied there for One year  
They studied there in 1965  
They studied there for two hours.  
They studied there in the spring  
They studied there for a month  
They studied there for several weeks  
They studied there in the winter  
They studied there in 1963 and '64.  
They studied there for an hour or two.  
They studied there in the fall semester  
They studied there for a whole month  
They studied there for a short time.  
They studied there in June and July  
They studied there for quite a while.

# 61. CALENDAR TIME/ CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

## *Conversation Drill A*

S1. I'm leaving the country very soon.  
S2. You're coming back (A), aren't you?  
S1. I'll be back (B)  
S2. Well, Relax and enjoy your vacation

(A)  
next fall  
in the spring  
before the winter  
after the holidays

(B)  
in September or October  
at the end of may  
on December fifteenth  
sometime before April first

## *Conversation Drill B*

S1. What would you like to do?  
S2. I'd like to (A)  
S1 I would too, but I can't.  
S2 Maybe we can (B)

(A)  
go shopping  
see a movie  
go for a walk  
go swimming  
ride over to John's

(B)  
go Friday or Saturday  
see one tomorrow night  
go for one in the morning  
go tomorrow or the next day  
do it some other day

## *Conversation Drill C*

S1. Could I help you?  
S2 How long will it take (A)  
S1 How soon do you need it?  
S2. I was hoping to have it (B)

(A)  
to have this watch repaired  
to get this suit pressed  
to have this- package sent to New York  
to get this thing changed  
to have this thing repaired

(B)  
by next week  
on Monday evening  
there in time for the holiday  
early in the week  
before Wednesday

## 62. VACATION TIME / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. How much vacation time do you get?  
S2. Only two weeks this year, but three weeks next year.  
S1. We get four weeks a year after five years of service,  
S2. I may take an extra week without pay this year.

### *Conversation B*

S1. Where do you plan to go for your vacation?  
S2. I'm going to Denmark.  
S1. When will you be back?  
S2. Probably in three or four weeks.

### *Conversation C*

S1. Are you going to take your vacation in June or July?  
S2. Are going to take it in July.  
S1. Are you going to go to Europe?  
S2. No. I'm going to go to South America,

### *Conversation D*

S1. Did you have a good vacation?  
S2. Yes, I did. I had a wonderful time.  
S1. What did you do?  
S2. I visited some old friends in Florida.

### *Conversation E*

S1. You haven't been around for a long time.  
S2. I've been away on a vacation ..  
S1. Everyone's been asking for you.  
S2. It's nice to be missed.

## 63. TIPS AND SIGHT-SEEING / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. Did you have a nice time over the weekend?

S2. I had lots of fun.

S1. What did you do?

S2. I did a lot of sight-seeing

### *Conversation B*

S1. How long were you out of town?

S2. I was away for two weeks.

S1. When were you away?

S2. I took the time off in August.

### *Conversation C*

S1. How did you go to India last month?

S2. We went by plane.

S1. What kind of plane did you take?

S2. It was a jet.

### *Conversation D*

S1. Have you ever been to Italy?

S2. No. I've never been there.

S1. Have you ever been to France?

S2. Yes. I was there last summer.

### *Conversation E*

S1. Did your parents stay in Rome for very long?

S2. Yes. They stayed there for two months.

S1. Did they describe their trip to you?

S2. Yes, and they showed us a lot of photographs .

## 64. TALKING ABOUT EATING / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. What did you have for breakfast?  
S2. I had coffee, toast, and eggs.  
S1. How did you have your eggs?  
S2. Soft-boiled, as usual.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. How about a cup of coffee?  
S2. That sounds good.  
S1. I always enjoy coffee after work.  
S2. I like it best in the morning.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Would you like to have an orange?  
S2. Thanks, but I don't think so.  
S1. Oranges are good for you.  
S2. I know, but I had one about an hour ago.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Where did you have lunch today?  
S2. I ate at the cafeteria with John.  
S1. Did you have a good lunch?  
S1. Yes. I had a hot roast beef sandwich.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. There's a cafeteria over there.  
S2. Didn't you eat before we left?  
S1. Yes, but I'm hungry again.  
S2. Well, I'm still digesting my lunch.

### *Exercise 1/ Line A1/*

What did you have for breakfast?

Lunch  
they  
eat  
dinner  
she

What did you have for lunch?  
What did they have for lunch?  
What did they eat for lunch?  
What did they eat for dinner?  
What did she eat for dinner?

**Exercise 2 / Line A3 /**

How did you have your eggs?

coffee  
meat  
potatoes  
vegetables  
salad

How did you have your coffee?  
How did you have your meat?  
How did you have your potatoes?  
How did you have your vegetables ?  
How did you have your salad?

**Exercise.3 / Lines A3 and A4 /**

Did you have your egg soft boiled?

hard-boiled  
poached  
scrambled  
fried

Did you have your eggs hard-boiled?  
Did you have your eggs poached?  
Did you have your eggs scrambled?  
Did you have your eggs fried?

**Exercise 4/ Lines B1 and B3 /**

I always enjoy a cup of coffee after work.

tea  
a glass of milk  
wine  
lemonade

I always enjoy a cup of tea after work.  
I always enjoy a glass of milk after work.  
I always enjoy a glass of wine after Work.  
I always enjoy a glass of lemonade after work.

**Exercise 5 / Lines C1 and C3 /**

Would you like to have an orange?  
Would you like to have an apple?  
Would you like to have a banana?  
Would you like to have a lemon?  
Would you like to have a tomato?

Oranges are good for you.  
Apples are good for you.  
Bananas are good for you,  
Lemons are good for you.  
Tomatoes are good for you.

# 65. BREAKFAST AND LUNCH AT A RESTAURENT / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. I'd like to order breakfast.  
S2. What can I bring you?  
S1. I'd like coffee, scrambled eggs, and bacon.  
S2. I'll bring the coffee first.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Please give me a ham sandwich.  
S2. Would you like it on rye bread or white?  
S1. Rye bread, please. With mustard.  
S2. Here it is.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. I'd like a piece of pie now and coffee later, please.  
S2. Do you want cream for your coffee?  
S1. Yes. Cream but no sugar.  
S2. I'll bring the pie right away.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. A hamburger and a cup of coffee, please.  
S2. Here you are.  
S1. How much do I owe you?  
S2. Sixty-two cents.

## *Exercise 1 / Line A3 /*

- |                         |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| I'd like coffee.        | I'd like some coffee, please.        |
| I'd like tea.           | I'd like some tea, please.           |
| I'd like orange juice.  | I'd like some orange juice, please.  |
| I'd like milk.          | I'd like some milk, please.          |
| I'd like hot chocolate. | I'd like some hot chocolate, please. |

## *Exercise 2 / Line B2 /*

Would you like some coffee?

orange juice  
care for  
tea

Would you like some orange juice?  
Would you care for some orange juice?  
Would you care for some tea?

anyone  
wine

Would anyone care for some tea?  
Would anyone care for some wine?

*Exercise 3 / Line B1 /*

Please give me a ham sandwich.

cheese  
ham and cheese  
roast beef  
chicken salad

Please give me a cheese sandwich.  
Please give me a ham and cheese sandwich  
Please give me a roast beef sandwich.  
Please give me a chicken salad sandwich.

*Exercise 4 / Line C2 /*

Do you want cream for your coffee?

sugar  
tea  
Would you like  
lemon  
Would you prefer

Do you want sugar for your coffee?  
Do you want sugar for your tea?  
Would you like sugar for your tea?  
Would you like lemon for your tea?  
Would you prefer lemon for your tea?

*Exercise 5 / Line E1 /*

Did you order some food?  
Are you ordering some food?  
Have you ordered some food?  
Are you going to order some food

Yes, I did. I ordered some food.  
Yes, I am. I'm ordering some food  
Yes, I have. I've ordered some food.  
Yes, I am. I'm going to order some food.

# 66. ORDERING FOOD / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. Could we have a table for four?  
S2. There's a nice table right there by the window.  
S1. May we also have the menu right away?  
S2. I'll get the menu immediately.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Would you care for some roast beef?  
S2. No. I'll have sirloin steak.  
S1. How do you like your steak?  
S2. I'd prefer it medium rare.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. Would you like to have soup?  
S2. Yes. Creamed onion, please  
S1. Mashed, boiled, or French-fried potatoes?  
S2. I'll have the French-fried.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. What vegetables would you like with your dinner?  
S2. Carrots, please, and corn with cream sauce.  
S1. What kind of dressing do you want on your salad-French?  
S2. I believe I'll take Russian dressing tonight.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Would you like to order a dessert?  
S2. What kinds of pie do you have?  
S1. Peach, lemon cream, and apple.  
S2. I'd like lemon cream, please.

## *Exercise 1 / Lines B1 and C1 /*

Would you care for some soup?

broth  
consomme  
potage  
chowder

Would you care for some broth?  
Would you care for some consomme?  
Would you care for some potage?  
Would you care for some chowder?

## *Exercise 2 / Lines C1, C2, E4 /*

I'd like creamed onion soup, please.

mushroom

I'd like mushroom soup, please.

vegetable  
potato  
cream of tomato

I'd like vegetable soup, please.  
I'd like potato soup, please.  
I'd like cream of tomato soup, please.

*Exercise 3 / Lines C3, C4, D4 /*

I believe I'll have mashed potatoes.

baked  
scalloped  
French-fried  
hashed brown  
sweet

I believe I'll have baked potatoes.  
I believe I'll have scalloped potatoes.  
I believe I'll have French-fried potatoes.  
I believe I'll have hashed brown potatoes  
I believe I'll have sweet potatoes.

*Exercise 4 / Lines C4, D4 /*

I think I'll have pie for dessert.

cake  
pudding  
cookies  
custard  
ice cream

I think I'll have cake for dessert.  
I think I'll have pudding for dessert.  
I think I'll have cookies for dessert.  
I think I'll have custard for dessert.  
I think I'll have ice cream for dessert.

*Exercises / Line E4 /*

I'd like lemon cream pie, please.

apple.  
peach  
blueberry  
orange meringue  
coconut custard

I'd like apple pie, please.  
I'd like peach pie, please.  
I'd like blueberry pie, please.  
I'd like orange meringue pie, please.  
I'd like coconut custard pie, please.

## 67. HAVING DINNER AT A RESTAURENT/ CONVERSATIONS

---

*Conversation A*

S1. What'll you have, sir?

S2. May I have a menu, please?  
S1. A menu? Here you are, sir.  
S2. Now, I'll need a few minutes to look it over.

*Conversation B*

S1. I'll have the sirloin steak listed here.  
S2. How do you like your steak-well done?  
S1. No. I'd prefer it medium rare.  
S2. I'm sure you'll enjoy our steak.

*Conversation C*

S1. Would you care for soup?  
S2. Yes, I would. Vegetable soup, please.  
S1. What would you like for your main course?  
S2. I'm going to have beef stew for my main course.

*Conversation D*

S1. Would you care for dessert after your main course?  
S2. Possibly. What kind of pie do you have?  
S1. Peach, banana cream, and blueberry chiffon.  
S2. I think I'd like to try the banana cream.

*Conversation E*

S1. Coffee, tea, or milk?  
S2. Coffee-with the meal, please.  
S1. Do you want cream and sugar?  
S2. No. I'll take my coffee black.

*Exercise 1 / Line B1 /*

I'll have the sirloin steak listed here.

pot roast	I'll have the pot roast listed here.
roast beef	I'll have the roast beef listed here.
barbecued beef	I'll have the barbecued beef listed here.
filet mignon	I'll have the filet mignon listed here.
Swiss steak	I'll have the Swiss steak listed here.
lamb curry	I'll have the lamb curry listed here.
breaded veal cutlets	I'll have the breaded veal cutlets listed here.
veal patties	I'll have the veal patties listed here.
veal parmesan	I'll have the veal parmesan listed here.
broiled pork chops	I'll have the broiled pork chops listed here
stuffed pork chops	I'll have the stuffed pork chops listed here
baked spareribs	I'll have the baked spareribs listed here
barbecued spareribs	I'll have the barbecued spareribs listed here.
meat loaf	I'll have the meat loaf listed here
ham loaf	I'll have the ham loaf listed here.

*Exercise 2 / Line C4 /*

I'm going to have beef stew.

pork sausages  
browned hash  
meat croquettes  
Swedish meatballs  
Hungarian goulash  
Calf's liver  
broiled duckling  
fried chicken  
stewed chicken  
roast turkey  
broiled lobster  
scalloped oysters  
steamed clams

I'm going to have pork sausages.  
I'm going to have browned hash.  
I'm going to have meat croquettes.  
I'm going to have Swedish meatballs  
I'm going to have Hungarian goulash.  
I'm going to have calf's liver.  
I'm going to have broiled duckling  
I'm going to have fried chicken.  
I'm going to have stewed chicken.  
I'm going to have roast turkey  
I'm going to have broiled lobster.  
I'm going to have scalloped oysters.  
I'm going to have steamed clams.

## 68. DINNER CONVERSATIONS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

S1. I hope you're hungry tonight.  
S2. I'm sure I'll have a good appetite.  
S1. There's a menu right beside you,  
S2. Thanks. I See it.

### *Conversation B*

S1. What do you usually have for dinner?  
S2. Potatoes and some kind of meat.

S1. Do you ever have anything else?  
S2. Oh, have other things-for example, fish, rice, and vegetables.

*Conversation C*

S1. The fish is delicious in this restaurant, I hear.  
S2. It's a popular dish in this country.  
S1. But I always choose steak if possible.  
S2. Well, I'm going to have fish.

*Conversation D*

S1. Do you like vegetables.  
S2. I like some but not all.  
S1. What kind do you like?  
S2. I like lettuce and radishes and a few others.

*Conversation E*

S1. Do you always drink tea with your meals?  
S2. Not always, but usually.  
S1. How do you like your tea?  
S2. With sugar and lemon.

*Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

I hope you're hungry tonight.

ready to eat  
have a good appetite  
feel like eating well  
order enough food  
something different

I hope you're ready to eat tonight.  
I hope you have a good appetite tonight.  
I hope you feel like eating well tonight.  
I hope you order enough food tonight.  
I hope you order something different tonight.

*Exercise 2 / Line C1 /*

The fish is delicious in this restaurant.

Wonderful  
The meat  
Always  
Excellent  
The chicken

The fish is wonderful in this restaurant  
The meat is wonderful in this restaurant  
The meat is always wonderful in this restaurant  
The meat is always excellent in this restaurant.  
The chicken is always excellent in this restaurant.

*Exercise 3 / Line C2 /*

That's a popular dish in this country.

kind of food  
famous  
the United States  
kind of meal  
well-known

That's a popular kind of food in this country.  
That's a famous kind of food in this country.  
That's a famous kind of food in the United States.  
That's a famous kind of meal in the United States.  
That's a well-known kind of meal in the United States.

*Exercise 4 / Line E1 /*

Do *you* always drink tea with your meals?

coffee  
usually  
at breakfast  
milk  
generally

Do you always drink coffee with your meals?  
Do you usually drink coffee with your meals?  
Do you usually drink coffee at breakfast?  
Do you usually drink milk at breakfast?  
Do you generally drink milk at breakfast?

## 69. PERSONAL HEALTH / CONVERSATIONS

---

*Conversation A*

S1. You look very pale.  
S2. I feel rather dizzy, and I have a headache.  
S1. Maybe you're catching a cold.  
S2. You're probably right

*Conversation B.*

S1. You went to the doctor today, didn't you?  
S2. Yes. I go once a year for a checkup.  
S1. What did he say?  
S2. He said my health was good.

*Conversation C*

S1. Have you put on weight recently?  
S2. probably have.  
S1. Maybe you don't get enough exercise.  
S2. I really don't, but I'm careful about eating.

*Conversation D*

S1. You certainly look very healthy to me.  
S2. I've been feeling very well lately.  
S1. Haven't you gotten a little heavier?  
S2. Yes, I think I have.

*Conversation E*

S1. You certainly look happy about something.  
S2. I've lost some weight.  
S1. You look much better.  
S2. I feel better too.



## 70. COMMON HEALTH PROBLEMS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. I have a terrible headache today.  
 S2. Have you taken any aspirin for it?  
 S1. Yes. I'll get over it soon.  
 S2. Lying down for a few minutes might help it too.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. I've got a cold in my head.  
 S2. It's probably this terrible weather.  
 S1. It's giving everyone a cold.  
 S2. hope I don't catch one.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. What are you taking for your cold?  
 S2. Just the usual things-water and fruit juice.  
 S1. You'll be over it soon then.  
 S2. I really hope you're right.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. You look tired. Are you ill?  
 S2. I think I've caught a cold.  
 S1. How can tell?  
 S2. My throat is sore.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. You don't look very well.  
 S2. I don't feel very well either.  
 S1. Why don't you rest for a few minutes?  
 S2. I think I will.

### *Exercise 1 / line A1 /*

I have a terrible headache today.

<p>Stomachache          severe          backache          very bad          earacle</p>	<p>I have a terrible stomachache today.          I have a severe stomachache today.          I have a severe backache today.          I have a very bad backache today.          I have a very bad earache today.</p>
---	---

### *Exercise 2 / Line A4 /*

Lying down might help it too.

taking some medicine  
resting a while  
going to bed  
drinking some tea

Taking some medicine might help it too.  
might help it too.  
Going to bed might help it too.  
Drinking some tea might help it too.

*Exercise 3 / Line C1 /*

What are you doing for your cold?

toothache  
upset stomach  
rheumatism  
sore throat

What are you doing for your toothache?  
What are you doing for your upset stomach?  
What are you doing for your rheumatism?  
What are you doing for your sore throat?

*Exercise 4 / Line D2 /*

I think I've caught a cold.

broken my finger  
scratched my arm  
injured my knee  
hurt my shoulder

I think I've broken my finger.  
I think I've scratched my arm.  
I think I've injured my knee.  
I think I've hurt my shoulder.

*Exercise 5 / Line D4 /*

My throat is sore.

Toes  
leg  
shoulders  
wrist  
chest

My toes are sore.  
My leg is sore.  
My shoulders are sore.  
My wrist is sore.  
My chest is sore.

# 71. AT THE DOCTOR'S OFFICE / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. I think I've got a fever.  
 S2. Do you feel very hot?  
 S1. Yes, and I've been sweating a lot.  
 S2. You'd better go to a doctor.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. I feel Quite sick, Doctor.  
 S2. Can you tell me about it?  
 S1. I've got a headache and stomach cramps.  
 S2. I'd better take your temperature.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. Is the cut on my hand dangerous?  
 S2. No, but there's a little infection.  
 S1. What can you do about an infection?  
 S2. I'll use an antibiotic, and it'll be gone by tomorrow.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. Have you ever had pneumonia?  
 S2. Yes. I had it about two years ago.  
 S1. Have you ever had measles?  
 S2. No. I've never had measles.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Do I have anything serious, Doctor?  
 S2. Only a slight cold.  
 S1. Will it last very?  
 S2. No. It'll probably go away in a day or two.

## *Exercise / Line A1 /*

I think I've got a fever.

- |                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| a rash          | I think I've got a rash.          |
| an allergy      | I think I've got an allergy.      |
| an infection    | I think I've got an infection.    |
| a blister       | I think I've got a blister.       |
| an inflammation | I think I've got an inflammation. |
| an abscess      | I think I've got an abscess.      |

## *Exercise 2 / Line C3 /*

What can you do about an infection?

appendicitis	What can you do about appendicitis?
flu	What can you do about flu?
an abscess	What can you do about an abscess?
diarrhea	What can you do about diarrhea?
insomnia	What can you do about insomnia?
a sore throat	What can you do about a sore throat?

**Exercise 3 / Line D 1 /**

Have you ever had pneumonia?

hay fever	Have you ever had hay fever?
asthma	Have you ever had asthma?
rheumatism	Have you ever had rheumatism?
sinus trouble	Have you ever had sinus trouble?
ulcers	Have you ever had ulcers?
low blood pressure	Have you ever had low blood pressure?

**Exercise 4 / Line D4 /**

I've never had measles.

mumps	I've never had mumps
scarlet fever	I've never had scarlet fever.
chicken pox	I've never had chicken pox.
smallpox	I've never had small pox.
tuberculosis	I've never had tuberculosis.
malaria	I've never had malaria.

**Exercise 5 / Line E4 /**

It'll probably go away in a day or two.

an hour or two from now	It'll probably go away an hour or two from now.
in a matter of minutes	It'll probably go away in a matter of minutes.
in a short time	It'll probably go away in a short time.
within a few hours	It'll probably go away within a few hours.
before you get home	It'll probably go away before you get home.

## 72. QUITTING AND FINDING JOBS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. How did you find your new job?  
S2. I went to an employment agency.  
S1. Was it worth it to do it that way?  
S2. They were able to get me something good right away.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. I think I'm going to change jobs.  
S2. What do you want to do that for?  
S1. There's not enough chance to get ahead here.  
S2. But don't forget you're getting a pretty, good salary.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Did it take you long to apply for a job?  
S2. Too long in my opinion.  
S1. What did you have to do?  
S2. Speak to people, fill out forms, and wait.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Is John going to quit his job next month?  
S2. No. He's going to quit next January.  
S1. Are his parents going to support him then?  
S2. No. He isn't going to ask them for any money.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I'd like to speak to the personnel manager, please.  
S2. May I ask what it's about?  
S1. I'd like to see him about the position advertised in today's newspaper.  
S2. Certainly. Just have a seat over there for a moment.

## **73. OFFICE DETAILS / CONVERSATIONS**

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. How long has that man been over there at the desk?  
S2. About a minute or two, I think.  
S1. Can you find out what he wants?  
S2. I'll ask him right away.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Has the secretary the letter yet?  
S2. Yes. She's already sent them the letter.  
S1. She still hasn't sent a copy of the letter to me.  
S2. I forgot to tell you she gave me your copy.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. To whom did you send the invoice?  
S2. I sent it the General Sales Company.  
S1. Specifically, whom did you address it to?  
S2. I addressed it to the purchasing agent.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Have you finished the report on current inventory yet?  
S2. No, I haven't, but I certainly wish I had.  
S1. Why haven't you finished it?  
S2. I didn't have enough time to spend on it yesterday.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I'm having some trouble with this sales-volume report.  
S2. You didn't have any trouble with your report last week.  
S1. Well, there are some difficult parts in this one.  
S2. I'm sorry, but I don't have any suggestions.

## 74. OFFICE CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. What did you spend all your time on today?  
S2. Checking the annual report.  
S1. Was everything in it right?  
S2. No. I discovered several errors.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. How is the mail handled?  
S2. The executive secretary opens it and sorts it out.  
S1. Is any record kept of incoming mail?  
S2. Yes.-Everything is entered on the mail register.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Do you receive many inquiries about your product?  
S2. Yes. There are a good number every day,  
S1. You can't answer all of them personally~ can you?  
S2. No. Unless they're obviously important, we send back a form

### *Conversation D*

- S1. I'd like to dictate a letter to the A.B.C. Company.  
S2. Just a moment please, while I get my shorthand notebook.  
S1. Would you also bring me the previous correspondence with them?  
S2. I've already put the file on your desk.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I've been working very hard recently.  
S2. How come you've been working so hard?  
S1. I've been trying to impress my boss.  
S2. I hope you haven't in vain.

## 75. CONVERSATIONS ABOUT SCHOOL / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Does Dr. Taylor teach every day?  
 S2. No. Only Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.  
 S1. Is Dr. Taylor teaching right now?  
 S2. No, he isn't. He's working in his office.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Why doesn't John practice anymore?  
 S2. He doesn't have much free time.  
 S1. He used to have a lot of free time, didn't he?  
 S2. Yes, he did, but now he's going to school every night.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. What are you studying this semester?  
 S2. History, English, and math.  
 S1. Which do you like best?  
 S2. History really interests me the most.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Not all students do their lessons carefully.  
 S2. I do mine carefully.  
 S1. But your brother often does his at the last moment.  
 S2. And my sister always does hers a day or two late.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. How come you aren't at school today?  
 S2. There aren't any classes this week.  
 S1. Well, how come there aren't any classes?  
 S2. This is our spring vacation.

### *Exercise 1 / Lines A1 and A2 /*

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Does Dr. Taylor teach every day?    | He teaches on Monday.     |
| Does Dr. Taylor write every day?    | He writes on Tuesday.     |
| Does Dr. Taylor drive every day?    | He drives on Wednesday.   |
| Does Dr. Taylor watch every day?    | He watches on Thursday.   |
| Does Dr. Taylor listen every day?   | He listens on Friday.     |
| Does Dr. Taylor practice every day? | He practices on Saturday. |
| Does Dr. Taylor rest every day?     | He rests on Sunday.       |

### *Exercise 2 / Lines A1 and A3 /*

- |                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| Does he teach every day? | Is he teaching right now?    |
| Do they study every day? | Are they studying right now? |

Do you practice every day?  
Does she drive every day?  
Do they watch every day?  
Does he listen every day?  
Do you rest every day?

Are you practicing right now?  
Is she driving right now?  
Are they watching right now?  
Is he listening right now?  
Are you resting right now?

*Exercise 3 / Lines A1 and A3 /*

They listen every day.  
He's studying right now.  
She walks every day.  
I'm practicing right now.  
They drive every day.  
He's teaching right now.

Do they listen every day?  
Is he studying right now?  
Does she walk every day?  
Are you practicing right now?  
Do they drive every day?  
Is he teaching right now?

*Exercise 4 / Line B1 /*

John doesn't practice anymore.  
We don't practice anymore.  
They don't practice anymore.  
Mary doesn't practice anymore.  
I don't practice anymore.  
The boys don't practice any more

Why doesn't John practice anymore?  
Why don't you practice anymore?  
Why don't they practice anymore?  
Why doesn't Mary practice any more?  
Why don't you practice anymore?  
Why don't the boys practice anymore?

*Exercise 5 / Line B2 /*

He doesn't have much time.  
He doesn't have many friends.  
He doesn't have much experience.  
He doesn't have many books.  
He doesn't have much information.  
He doesn't have much training.  
He doesn't have much money.  
He has a lot of time.

He has a lot of time.  
He has a lot of friends.  
He has a lot of experience  
He has a lot of books.  
He has a lot of books.  
He has a lot of information.  
He has a lot of training.  
He has a lot of money.

*Exercise 6 / Line B3 /*

He had a lot of time.  
He had a lot of friends.  
He had a lot of experience.  
He had a lot of books.  
He had a lot of information.  
He had a lot of training.  
He had a lot of money.

He had lots of time.  
He had lots of friends.  
He had lots of experience.  
He had lots of books.  
He had lots of Information.  
He had lots of training.  
He had lots of money.

*Exercise 7 / Line B3 /*

He used to have a lot of free time.

practice every day  
study almost every night  
read a lot of books  
learn everything by hear

He used to practice every day.  
He used to study almost every night  
He used to read a lot of books.  
He used to learn everything by heart

be a good student

He used to be a good student.

*Exercise 8 / Line B3 /*

He used to have a lot of free time.  
They used to practice every day.  
She used to study almost every night.  
I used to read a lot of books.  
You used to learn everything by heart.  
He used to work in the evening.

But he doesn't any more.  
But they don't any more.  
But she doesn't any more.  
But I don't any more.  
But you don't any more.  
But he doesn't any more.

*Exercise 9 / Line B4 /*

He's going to school every night.

We  
They  
I  
She  
Tom and I

We're going to school every night.  
They're going to school every night.  
I'm going to school every night.  
She's going to school every night.  
Tom and I are going to school every night.

*Exercise 10 / Line C 1 /*

I'm studying English this semester.  
She's studying geography this semester.  
They're studying history this semester.  
We're studying math this semester.  
He's studying chemistry this semester.  
Tom and I are studying physics this semester.

What are you studying this semester?  
What's she studying this semester?  
What are they studying this semester?  
What are you studying this semester?  
What's he studying this semester?  
What are Tom and you studying this semester?

*Exercise 11 / Line C4 /*

History really interests me the most.

Chemistry  
English  
Math  
Geography  
Physics

Chemistry really interests me the most.  
English really interests me the most.  
Math really interests me the most.  
Geography really interests me the most.  
Physics really interests me the most.

*Exercise 12 / Line D1 /*

Not all students do their lessons carefully.

correctly  
practice  
thoroughly  
go over  
promptly

Not all students do their lessons correctly.  
Not all students practice their lessons correctly.  
Not all students practice their lessons thoroughly.  
Not all students go over their lessons thoroughly.  
Not all students go over their lessons promptly.

*Exercise 13 / Line E1 /*

How come you aren't at school today?  
How come he isn't at school today?  
How come they aren't at school today?

Why aren't you at school today?  
Why isn't he at school today?  
Why aren't they at school today?

How come she isn't at school today?      Why isn't she at school today?  
 How come Tom and you aren't at school today      ?      Why aren't Tom and you at school today?  
 How come the girls aren't at school today?      Why aren't the girls at school today?

**Exercise 14 / Line E2 /**

There aren't any classes this week.  
 meetings  
 lectures  
 concerts  
 Discussions  
 examinations

There aren't any meetings this week.  
 There aren't any lectures this week.  
 There aren't any concerts this week.  
 There aren't any discussions this week.  
 There aren't any examinations this week.

**Exercise 15/ Line E2 /**

There aren't any classes this week.

meetings  
 today or tomorrow  
 lectures  
 during our vacation  
 examinations

There aren't any meetings this week.  
 There aren't any meetings today or tomorrow.  
 There aren't any lectures today or tomorrow.  
 There aren't any lectures during our vacation.  
 There aren't any examinations during our vacation.

## 76. GOING TO SCHOOL / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Why are you so worried?  
 S2. My sister doesn't study hard enough.  
 S1. Isn't she interested in school?  
 S2. School interests her, but homework doesn't.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. I'm worried about-my school work.  
 S2. What's the problem?  
 S1. I think I'm going to fail the examinations.  
 S2. Maybe you won't if you have more confidence.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. What are you going to study at the University?  
 S2. Probably history and English.  
 S1. You'll have to work hard.  
 S2. Yes. I've heard that it's a difficult school.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. What did you apply for?  
 S2. I applied for a scholarship.  
 S1. What school did you apply to?  
 S2. I applied to Eastern State College.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I understand the boys applications were turned down.  
 S2. Who turned them down?  
 S1. I think the college admissions committee.  
 S2. I'd advise them to try again.

### *Exercise 1/ Line A2 /*

My sister doesn't study hard enough.

carefully  
 read  
 thoroughly  
 Practice  
 long enough

My sister doesn't study carefully enough.  
 My sister doesn't read carefully enough.  
 My sister doesn't read thoroughly enough.  
 My sister doesn't practice thoroughly enough.  
 My sister doesn't practice long enough.

### *Exercise 2 / Line A3 /*

Isn't she interested in that?  
 Isn't she satisfied with that?  
 Isn't she annoyed over that?  
 Isn't she accustomed to that?  
 Isn't she adjusted to that?  
 Isn't she concerned about that?

She's interested in that, isn't she?  
 She's satisfied with that, isn't she?  
 She's annoyed over that, isn't she?  
 She's accustomed to that, isn't she?  
 She's adjusted to that, isn't she?  
 She's concerned about that, isn't she?

*Exercise 3 / Line A3 /*

Isn't she interested in school?

tired of  
 her work  
 satisfied with  
 annoyed over  
 all the changes  
 accustomed to  
 worried about  
 getting a job  
 concerned about  
 excited about  
 studying English  
 involved in  
 adjusted to  
 our new schedule  
 disappointed in

Isn't she tired of school?  
 Isn't she tired of her work?  
 Isn't she satisfied with her work?  
 Isn't she annoyed over her work?  
 Isn't she annoyed over all the changes?  
 Isn't she accustomed to all the changes?  
 Isn't she worried about all the changes?  
 Isn't she worried about getting a job?  
 Isn't she concerned about getting a job?  
 Isn't she excited about getting a job?  
 Isn't she excited about studying English?  
 Isn't she involved in studying English?  
 Isn't she adjusted to studying English?  
 Isn't she adjusted to our new schedule?  
 Isn't she disappointed in our new schedule?

*Exercise 4 / Line D 1 /*

What did you apply for?

complain about  
 comment on  
 listen to  
 succeed in

What did you complain about?  
 What did you comment on?  
 What did you listen to?  
 What did you succeed in?

*Exercise 5 / Line D 1 /*

Did you apply for a scholarship?  
 Did you complain about the noise?  
 Did you comment on the suggestion?  
 Did you listen to that program?  
 Did you succeed in your work?

What did you apply for?  
 What did you complain about?  
 What did you comment on?  
 What did you listen to?  
 What did you succeed in?

*Exercise 6 / Lines E1 and E2 /*

They were turned down.  
 They were looked over.  
 They were thrown away.  
 They were taken back.  
 They were used up.  
 They were given away.

Who turned them down?  
 Who looked them over?  
 Who threw them away?  
 Who took them back?  
 Who used them up?  
 Who gave them away?

*Exercise 7 / Line E4 /*

I'd advise them to try again.

ask  
urge  
Force  
Instruct  
Persuade

I'd ask them to try again.  
I'd urge them to try again.  
I'd force them to try again.  
I'd instruct them to try again.  
I'd persuade them to try again.

*Exercise 8 / Line E4 /*

They advised him to go.  
They asked him to go.  
They urged him to go.  
They forced him to go.  
They instructed him to go.  
They persuaded him to go.

He was advised to go.  
He was asked to go.  
He was urged to go.  
He was forced to go.  
He was instructed to go.  
He was persuaded to go.

## 77. THE ENGLISH CLASS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. English is the hardest language in the world.  
 S2. Why do you say that?  
 S1. I can't understand it or speak it.  
 S2. But this is only your first day in the English class!

### *Conversation B*

- S1. How do you pronounce this word in English?  
 S2. It's pronounced "sign."  
 S1. What's a sign?  
 S2. It's "public notice."

### *Conversation C*

- S1. What do you call this thing in English?  
 S2. It's a "hammer."  
 S1. What's the word for the things you hit with a hammer?  
 S2. "Nails" You pound nails into wood with a hammer.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. How do you ask for help politely?  
 S2. You say, "Could you help me, please?"  
 S1. Is it all right to say, "Could you please help me?"  
 S2. Yes. You can say it that way too.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Can you understand spoken English very well?  
 S2. Can understand you, but most people speak too fast.  
 S1. How about speaking? Can you carry on a conversation?  
 S2. I'm really not very fluent yet.

### *Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| English is hard.        | It's the hardest language in the world.          |
| English is difficult.   | It's the most difficult language in the world.   |
| English is easy.        | It's the simplest language in the world.         |
| English is complicated. | It's the most complicated language in the world. |
| English is simple.      | It's the easiest language in the world.          |

### *Exercise 2 / Line A4 /*

This is your first day in the class.

week  
the office  
third  
month  
factory

This is your first week in the class.  
This is your first week in the office.  
This is your third week in the office.  
This is your third month in the office.  
This is your third month in the factory.

*Exercise 3 / Lines D2 and D3 /*

Could you help me, please?	Could you please help me?
Could you come here, please?	Could you please come here?
Could you wait there, please?	Could you please wait there?
Could you correct this, please?	Could you please correct this?
Could you translate it, please?	Could you please translate it?

*Exercise 4 / Line D3 /*

Is it all right to say that?

Correct  
incorrect  
proper  
improper  
polite  
impolite

Is it correct to say that?  
Is it incorrect to say that?  
Is it proper to say that?  
Is it improper to say that?  
Is it polite to say that?  
Is it impolite to say that?

*Exercise 5 / Line D3 /*

Can you speak?	How about speaking?
Can you write?	How about writing?
Can you read?	How about reading?
Can you follow it?	How about following it?
Can you pronounce it?	How about pronouncing it?

## 78. LEARNING AND USING ENGLISH / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Do you want to learn English?  
S2. Yes, I do-very much.  
S1. Do you want English?  
S2. Because it'll be useful in the future.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. I want to learn English.  
S2. Then you must speak it.  
S1. Why must I speak it?  
S2. Because you want to learn it.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Do you understand the sentence?  
S2. I don't understand it completely.  
S1. All right, then. I'll repeat it.  
S2. Thank you very much this?

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Did you understand what I said?  
S2. No, didn't. Would say it again?  
S1. Of course. I'll say it again slowly.  
S2. That will help a lot.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Please write down John's address.  
S2. All right, but would you please speak very slowly?  
S1. Yes. Do you mean to spell each word too?  
S2. Not the numbers-only the names.

## 79. LANGUAGE LEARNING PROBLEMS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversations A*

- S1. What are you studying right now?  
S2. I'm doing my English assignment.  
S1. What's the hardest thing about English?  
S2. Pronunciation is the hardest thing for me.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Can Peter understand French as well as English?  
S2. Yes, and he can speak it well too.  
S1. I can't speak a word of any language except my own.  
S2. Neither can I.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. That man is able to speak three or four languages.  
S2. Yes, and he can speak them well, I understand  
S1. Could you learn three or four languages?  
S2. I could if I had a hundred years to do it.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. I'm feeling very discouraged.  
S2. What's the matter?  
S1. When people talk to me, they talk too fast.  
S2. You'll have to listen faster then.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Learning languages is difficult.  
S2. I wish there were only one language in the world.  
S1. Then we'd have to learn it.  
S2. That's the trouble, isn't it?

## 80. DRIVING A CAR / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Why don't we park the car there?  
S2. That's a no-parking zone.  
S1. There are parking meters in the next block.  
S2. Let's see if we can find a space there then.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. You'd better turn left at the next corner.  
S2. I can't-no left turn.  
S1. Then we'll have to drive around the block.  
S2. It looks like it.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. You're driving too fast.  
S2. What's the speed limit?  
S1. It's fifty miles per hour.  
S2. Then, I'm under the limit.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. How do you like your new car?  
S2. Great! I really like the automatic shift.  
S1. Does it have power steering?  
S2. Yes, and it's got power brakes too.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. You drive very well.  
S2. Thanks. I always try to be cautious.  
S1. You are, but best of all, you drive very smoothly.  
S2. Steady pressure on the accelerator and brakes is important.

# 81. CAR REPAIR / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. My car won't start.  
S2. Press the starter button.  
S1. Nothing happens when I press the starter.  
S2. Then your battery is dead.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Could you help me for a moment, please?  
S2. What can I do for you?  
S1. Could you look over my radiator?  
S2. I'll check it after I help that other man.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. What's your brother doing?  
S2. He's fixing the motor of the car  
S1. Does he need any help?  
S2. I don't think so.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. Could you look over my car?  
S2. What's the matter?  
S1. Well, don't know.  
S2. I can look at it now if you can wait.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Could you change my right tire, please? It's flat.  
S2. Certainly. Do you want us to fix it too?  
S1. Would you please?  
S2. We'll have it ready for you tomorrow morning.

## 82. GENERAL CONVERSATION (1)

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Where were you born?  
S2. I was born here.  
S1. Have you lived here all your life?  
S2. Yes, I have.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Whom will you get the money from?  
S2. We'll get it from our parents.  
S1. What will you spend the money on?  
S2. We'll spend it on books and supplies.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Do you want me to wait for you?  
S2. No. I can take care of everything myself.  
S1. Can't we get together a little later then?  
S2. Sure. I'll be through in about half an hour.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. What took you so long?  
S2. I had a lot of things to do.  
S1. We'd better hurry, or we'll be late.  
S2. I think you're right.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I'm starting my vacation next week.  
S2. You ought to see as much as you can.  
S1. That's what I think too.  
S2. You really ought to travel by bus then.

## 83. GENERAL CONVERSATIONS (2)

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Where did you get that book?  
S2. From the library in my neighborhood.  
S1. Is it a good library?  
S2. Come with me and see for yourself.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. We're going to be late for the meeting.  
S2. When does it start?  
S1. It starts in exactly fifteen minutes.  
S2. I think we'll be on time.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Something is bothering me.  
S2. What's bothering you?  
S1. I think I left the lights on in my apartment.  
S2. Well, there's nothing you can do about it now.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. What does that sign say?  
S2. It says "No Smoking."  
S1. What are you doing?  
S2. I'm putting out my cigarette.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I'm sorry I'm late for our appointment.  
S2. What happened?  
S1. The traffic was very heavy.  
S2. It's always bad at this time of the day.

## 84. GENERAL CONVERSATION (3)

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Where' Mrs. King?  
S2. She's in the other office right now.  
S1. Do you expect her back soon?  
S2. Yes, I do. In just a few minutes.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Someone wants to talk to you on the telephone.  
S2. Who is it? Do you know?  
S1. I'm sorry, but I forgot to ask.  
S2. It's OK. I think I know who it is.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Will there be a meeting here next week?  
S2. No, but there'll be one on the twentieth.  
S1. Will there be many people at the meeting?  
S2. According to John, there will.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. "Thy do you have to go to Hawaii?  
S2. I'm going for business reasons.  
S1. How will you travel, by boat or by plane?  
S2. 1ost likely, I'll go by plane.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Would you like to go to the store with us?  
S2. I'd like to, but I've got to do some work.  
S1. Why don't you do it later?  
S2. I wish I could, but I can't.



## 86. GENERAL CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. I'd like to speak to Mr. Smith.  
S2. Sorry. He isn't in now.  
S1. Can I leave a message for him?  
S2. Yes. I'll take the message.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Fred has to stay home, but I don't.  
S2. I don't either.  
S1. Would you like to with John and me?  
S2. Yes, I certainly would.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Where were you last Tuesday and Wednesday?  
S2. I was out of town.  
S1. Why did you leave town so suddenly?  
S2. A friend was sick and needed help.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. That's a good-looking suit you have on.  
S2. Thank you for the compliment.  
S1. When did you get it?  
S2. About two or three weeks ago.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. John hasn't called us yet.  
S2. I thought he called you yesterday.  
S1. No. We didn't hear from him at all.  
S2. I wonder what happened?

## 87. GENERAL CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. What's the matter?  
S2. I'm worried about something.  
S1. What's wrong?  
S2. I think I've lost my billfold.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Are you coming to the meeting tomorrow?  
S2. I'm coming.  
S1. Aren't you worried about driving in this weather?  
S2. Of course not.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. How do you start this machine? I  
S2. You just push the red button.  
S1. Where's the button?  
S2. It's right in front of you.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Well, it's cool and cloudy again today.  
S2. I wish that the sun were out.  
S1. It looks to me as if it's going to rain.  
S2. The farmers would like it if it did.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. If you had a lot of money, what would you buy?  
S2. I'd buy a big boat.  
S1. What would you do with it?  
S2. I'd take all my friends around the world.

## 88. SIMPLE QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. Fred practices very hard, I notice.  
 S2. Does he practice every day?  
 S1. Yes, he does.  
 S2. I don't practice that much.

### Conversation B

- S1. I'm having some trouble with my report.  
 S2. Are you having trouble with the last part?  
 S1. Yes, I am.  
 S2. Well, everyone is having trouble with that part.

### Conversation C

- S1. We saw the new flower show.  
 S2. Did you see it on the opening day?  
 S1. Yes, we did.  
 S2. We didn't see it until the following day.

### Conversation D

- S1. Did you write letters to all your friends?  
 S2. No, but I wrote letters to some of them.  
 S1. Are you going to write to everyone?  
 S2. Well, I'm going to write to as many as possible.

### Conversation E

- S1. Mary has only worn her new coat twice.  
 S2. Has she worn her new spring suit yet?  
 S1. Yes, she has. Several times, in fact.  
 S2. I know she hasn't worn her new shoes yet.

### Exercise 1

- |    |   |   |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | John studies.<br>every day<br>(?)         | Does John study?<br>Does John study every day?<br>Yes, he does. He studies every day.               |
| 2. | Fred doesn't study.<br>every day<br>(?)   | Doesn't Fred Study?<br>Doesn't Fred study every day?<br>No, he doesn't. He doesn't study every day. |
| 3. | The girl is studying.<br>right now<br>(?) | Is the girl studying?<br>Is the girl studying right now?<br>Yes, she is. She's studying right now.  |
| 4. | They aren't studying.<br>right now        | Aren't they studying?<br>Aren't they studying right now?  |

- |     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
| 5.  | (?)<br>Mary studied.<br>Yesterday<br>(?)    | No, they aren't. They aren't studying right now.<br>Did Mary study?<br>Did Mary study yesterday?   |
| 6.  | Fred didn't study.<br>yesterday '<br>(?)    | Yes, she did. She studied yesterday.<br>Didn't Fred study?<br>Didn't Fred study yesterday?   |
| 7.  | I'm going to study.<br>Tomorrow<br>(?)      | No, he didn't. study yesterday.<br>Are you going to study?<br>Are you going to study tomorrow?   |
| 8.  | He isn't going to study.<br>tomorrow<br>(?) | Yes, I am. I'm going to study tomorrow.<br>Isn't he going to study?<br>isn't he going to study tomorrow?   |
| 9.  | The girl will study.<br>Tomorrow<br>(?)     | No, he isn't. he is not going to study tomorrow.<br>Will the girl study?<br>Will the girl study tomorrow?  |
| 10. | The men won't study.<br>Tomorrow<br>(?)     | Yes, she will. She'll study tomorrow.<br>Won't the men study?<br>Won't the men study tomorrow?   |
| 11. | John has studied.<br>since June<br>( ? )    | No, they won't. They won't study tomorrow.<br>Has John studied?<br>Has John studied since June?  |
| 12. | Fred hasn't studied.<br>since June<br>( ? ) | Yes, he has. He's studied since June.<br>Hasn't Fred studied?<br>Hasn't Fred studied since June?<br>No, he hasn't. He hasn't studied since June. |

### Exercise 2

- |     |  |   |
|-----|--|---|
| 1.  | He isn't in his office now.<br>(?)         | Isn't he in his office now<br>No, he isn't He isn't in his office now                     |
| 2.  | He works very efficiently.<br>(?.)         | Does he work very efficiently?<br>Yes, he does. He works very efficiently?                |
| 3.  | He hasn't tried that<br>method.<br>( ? )   | Hasn't he tried that method?<br>No, he hasn't. He hasn't tried that method                |
| 4.  | He wore a new suit yesterday<br>( ? )      | Did he wear a new suit yesterday?<br>Yes, he did. He work a new suit yesterday.           |
| 5.  | He couldn't be with them.<br>( ? )         | Couldn't he be with them?<br>No, he couldn't. He couldn't be with them.                   |
| 6.  | He won't have enough time.<br>(?)          | Won't he have enough time?<br>No, he won't. He won't have enough time.                    |
| 7.  | He found the correct answer. Did he<br>(?) | Did he find the correct answer? Yes, he.<br>did. He found the correct answer              |
| 8.  | He's forgotten their<br>names<br>(?)       | Has he forgotten their names?<br>Yes, he has. He's forgotten their names.<br>their names. |
| 9.  | He wasn't working on<br>that.<br>(?)       | Wasn't he working on that?<br>No, he wasn't.<br>He wan't working on that.                 |
| 10. | He must rely on his<br>friends.<br>(?)     | Must he rely on his friends?<br>Yes, he must. He must rely on<br>his friends.             |
| 11. | He has to explain every<br>today.<br>(?)   | Does he have to explain every thing?<br><br>Yes, he does. He has to explain every thing   |
| 12. | He didn't drive to work                    | Didn't the drive to work today?   |

- |     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
|     | today<br>(?)                             | No, he didn't. He didn't drive to work today.<br>to work today.                      |
| 13. | He does all his work<br>promptly.<br>(?) | Shouldn't he have waited?<br>No, he shouldn't have. He<br>shouldn't have waited.     |
| 14. | He does all his work<br>promptly.<br>(?) | Does he do all his work<br>Promptly?<br>Yes, he does. He does all his work promptly. |
| 15. | He'll meet the men there.<br>(?)         | Will he meet the men there?<br>Yes, he will. He'll meet the men there.<br>Men there. |
| 16. | He used to enjoy baseball.<br>(?)        | Did he use to enjoy baseball?<br>Yes, he did. He used to enjoy baseball.             |

## 89. SHORT ANSWER (1) /CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Don't you work every Saturday morning?  
S2. No, we don't. Just on occasion.  
S1. Did you work last Saturday morning?  
S2. No, we didn't

**Conversation B**

- S1. Didn't those tourists go to the park yesterday?  
S2. Yes, they did.  
S1. Did they go with you and John?  
S2. No, they didn't but we saw them there.

**Conversation C**

- S1. Are you going to your class now?  
S2. No. I'm not, but I'll be leaving shortly.  
S1. Do you go to school every afternoon?  
S2. No, I don't. Only Tuesday and Thursday afternoons.

**Conversation D**

- S1. Have you ever been to the Central Zoo?  
S2. No, I never have.  
S1. Would you care to go there with me tomorrow?  
S2. Yes, I certainly would.

**Conversation E**

- S1. Shouldn't you answer their letter quite soon?  
S2. Ye, I really should.  
S1. Don't you have to send them some money too?  
S2. No, I don't. Not in this next letter.

## 90. SHORT ANSWERS (2) / CONVERSATION

---

### Conversation A

- S1. Are you going to attend the reception?  
 S2. Yes, I am.  
 S1. Are you going to stay very late?  
 S2. No, I'm not.

### Conversation B

- S1. Are there many rooms in their apartment?  
 S2. Yes, there are. About six, I think  
 S1. Is there much light in the apartment?  
 S2. No, there isn't, because there are very few Windows.

### Conversation C

- S1. Are You reading that magazine?  
 S2. Yes, I am. I'm reading the book review.  
 S1. Are You using your dictionary?  
 S2. No, I'm not, but I'm doing quite well.

### Conversation D

- S1. Has John spoken to you yet?  
 S2. Yes, he has, and he's spoken to Mrs. White too.  
 S1. Did he speak to you yesterday?  
 S2. Yes, he did. Around four o'clock.

### Conversation E

- S1. Will Mary be at the party?  
 S2. Yes, she will, but she'll be a little late.  
 S1. Will she be with her weekend guests?  
 S2. No, she won't.

### Exercise 1

- |                          |                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Does he practice?     | Yes, he does.     |
| 2. Will he practice?     | Yes, he will.     |
| 3. Can he practice?      | Yes, he, can.     |
| 4. What does he do?      | He practice.      |
| 5. What can he do?       | He'll practice.   |
| 6. What can he do?       | He can practice.  |
| 7. should they do?       | Yes, they should. |
| 8. Have they read?       | Yes, they have.   |
| 9. Are they reading?     | Yes, they are.    |
| 10. What should they do? | They should read. |
| 11. What have they done? | They've read.     |
| 12. What are they doing? | They're reading.  |
| 13. Did you copy them?   | Yes, I did.       |

- |     |                                  |                          |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 14. | Must you copy them?              | Yes, I must              |
| 15. | Have you copied them?            | Yes, I Have              |
| 16. | What did you do?                 | I copied them.           |
| 17. | What must you do?                | I must copy them.        |
| 18. | What have you done?              | I've copied them.        |
| 19. | Isn't she going to go home?      | Yes, she is.             |
| 20. | Wasn't she going home?           | Yes, she was             |
| 21. | Hadn't she better go home?       | Yes, she'd better.       |
| 22. | What's she going to do?          | She's going to go home.  |
| 23. | What was she doing?              | She was going home.      |
| 24. | What had she better do?          | She'd better go home.    |
| 25. | Shouldn't he speak English?      | Yes, he should.          |
| 26. | Didn't he have to speak English? | Yes, he did.             |
| 27. | Couldn't he speak English?       | Yes, he could.           |
| 28. | What should he do?               | He should speak English. |
| 29. | What did he have to do?          | He had to speak English. |
| 30. | What could he do?                | He could speak English.  |

# 91. INTERROGATIVE WORDS (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

- S1. Is that Mr. Brown's office?  
 S2. Yes, it is.  
 S1. Whose office is this?  
 S2. This office is Mr. Green's.

## Conversation B

- S1. Where's there a bus stop?  
 S2. I'm sorry. I didn't hear you.  
 S1. Is there a bus stop at the next corner?  
 S2. No, but there's a bus stop two blocks from here.

## Conversation C

- S1. Did the Italian students arrive here during the summer?  
 S2. No. They arrived here just a month ago.  
 S1. How long ago did the Greek students arrive?  
 S2. They arrived exactly two months ago.

## Conversation D

- S1. Did you paint your garage on Saturday?  
 S2. Yes. I painted the whole garage in three hours.  
 S1. What color did you paint it?  
 S2. I finally decided to paint it blue.

## Conversation E

- S1. Is Tom's dictionary around here anywhere?  
 S2. Yes. Tom's dictionary is over there on the table.  
 S1. Which one is Tom's-the red one or the blue one?  
 S2. The red one is his.

## Exercise 1

- |    |                            |  |
|----|----------------------------|--|
| 1. | They're studying.<br>(??)  | What are they studying?<br>They're studying their lessons. |
| 2. | She'll study.<br>(??)      | What will she study?<br>She'll study her lesson.           |
| 3. | I studied.<br>(??)         | What did you study?<br>I studied my lessons.               |
| 4. | He's studying.<br>(??)     | What did you study?<br>He's studying his lesson.           |
| 5. | They've studied.<br>(??)   | What have they studied?<br>They've studied their lessons.  |
| 6. | I'm going to study.<br>(?) | What are you going to study?                               |

- |     |   |   |
|-----|---|---|
| 7.  | <b>She can study.</b><br>(?? )          | <b>What can she study?</b><br><b>She can study her lessons.</b>                     |
| 8.  | <b>He studies.</b><br>(?? )             | <b>What does he study?</b><br><b>He studies his lessons.</b>                        |
| 9.  | <b>They must study.</b><br>(?? )        | <b>What must they study?</b><br><b>They must study their lessons.</b>               |
| 10. | <b>I should study.</b><br>(??)          | <b>What should you study?</b><br><b>I should study my lessons.</b>                  |
| 11. | <b>They were studying.</b><br>(?? )     | <b>What were they studying?</b><br><b>They were studying their lessons.</b>         |
| 12. | <b>He used to study.</b><br>(??)        | <b>What did he use to study?</b><br><b>He used to study his lessons.</b>            |
| 13. | <b>She's supposed to study.</b><br>(??) | <b>What's she supposed to study?</b><br><b>She's supposed to study her lessons.</b> |
| 14. | <b>They'll study.</b><br>(?? )          | <b>What will they study?</b><br><b>They'll study their lessons.</b>                 |
| 15. | <b>I'd better study.</b><br>(?? )       | <b>What had you better study?</b><br><b>I'd better study my lessons.</b>            |
| 16. | <b>They have to study.</b><br>(??)      | <b>What do they have to study?</b><br><b>They have to study their lessons.</b>      |
| 17. | <b>He's been studying.</b><br>(??)      | <b>What's he been studying?</b><br><b>He's been studying his lessons.</b>           |
| 18. | <b>We had to study.</b><br>(??)         | <b>What did you have to study?</b><br><b>We had to study our lessons.</b>           |

**Exercise 2**

- |     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
| 1.  | I'll write at home.<br>(??)              | Where will you write?<br>I'll write at home                    |
| 2.  | I wrote my English lesson.<br>(??)       | What did you write?<br>I wrote my English lesson               |
| 3.  | I must write for extra practice.<br>(??) | Why must you write?<br>I must write for extra practice         |
| 4.  | I should write in the evening.<br>(??)   | When should you write?<br>I should write in the evening.       |
| 5.  | I've written to Mr. Brown.<br>(??)       | Whom have you written to?<br>I've written to Mr. Brown.        |
| 6.  | I write for extra practice.<br>(??)      | Why do you write?<br>I write for extra practice.               |
| 7.  | I'm going to write at home.<br>(??)      | Where are you going to write?<br>I'm going to write at home.   |
| 8.  | I used to write in the evening.<br>(??)  | When did you use to write?<br>I used to write in the evening.  |
| 9.  | I'm writing for extra practice.<br>(??)  | Why are you writing?<br>I'm writing for extra practice.        |
| 10. | I have to write to Mr. Brown<br>(??)     | Whom do you have to write to?<br>I have to write to Mr. Brown. |
| 11. | I was writing my English lesson<br>(??). | What were you writing?<br>I was writing my English lesson.     |
| 12. | I wrote for extra practice.<br>(??)      | Why did you write?<br>I wrote for extra practice.              |
| 13. | I can write at home.<br>(??)             | Where can you write?<br>I can write at home.                   |
| 14. | I plan to write to Mr.<br>(??)           | Whom do you plan to write to?<br>I plan to write to Mr. Brown. |
| 15. | I'm writing for extra practice.<br>(??)  | Why are you writing?<br>I'm writing for extra practice.        |
| 16. | I write in the evening.<br>(??)          | When do you write?<br>I write in the evening.                  |
| 17. | I've written my English lesson.<br>(??)  | What have you written?<br>I've written my English lesson.      |
| 18. | I had to write at home.<br>(??)          | Where did you have to write?<br>I had to write at home.        |

## 92. INTERROGATIVE WORDS (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversations A*

- S1. We should complain about the service in this store.  
 S2. Should we to one of clerks?  
 S1. I don't think so.  
 S2. Whom should we complain to then?

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Have you chosen furniture for your apartment yet?  
 S2. No, we haven't.  
 S1. Why haven't you chosen any yet?  
 S2. Frankly, we just haven't had enough time.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Does Mary have to go?  
 S2. Yes, she does. She has to go to the airport.  
 S1. How soon does she have to go?  
 S2. I'm not sure just how soon.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Do you prefer this picture or that one?  
 S2. Of those two, I think I prefer the bottom one.  
 S1. Which one of the other two do you prefer?  
 S2. I really can't decide.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I couldn't finish all the work yesterday.  
 S2. How come you couldn't finish it?  
 S1. Because I got started too late.  
 S2. Why don't you get started earlier next time?

### *Exercise 1*

- |                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. What can he do?           | He can write.        |
| 2. What should he do?        | He should write.     |
| 3. What does he do?          | He writes.           |
| 4. What will he do?          | He'll write.         |
| 5. What's he doing?          | He's writing.        |
| 6. What must he do?          | He must write.       |
| 7. What's he done?           | He's written.        |
| 8. What did he do?           | He wrote.            |
| 9. What was he doing?        | He was writing.      |
| 10. What had he better do?   | He'd better write.   |
| 11. What's he going to do?   | He's going to write. |
| 12. What does he plan to do? | He plans to write.   |

13. What could he do?
14. What did he have to do?
15. What should he have done?
16. What did he use to do?

He could write.  
 He had to write.  
 He should have written.  
 He used to write.

### Exercise 2

1. They'll write something.
2. They were writing something.
3. They write something.
4. They've written something.
5. They're going to write something.
6. They should write something.
7. They can write something.
8. They wrote something.
9. They must write something.
10. They're writing something.
11. They plan to write something.
12. They used to write something.
13. They could have written something.
14. They'd better write something

What will they write?  
 What were they writing?  
 What do they write?  
 What have they written?  
 What are they going to write?  
 What should they write?  
 What can they write?  
 What did they write?  
 What must they write?  
 What are they writing?  
 What do they plan to write?  
 What did they use to write?  
 What could they have written?  
 What had they better write?

### Exercise 3

- |                          |                   |                                  |
|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. He can write          | Where?            | Where can he write?              |
|                          | At home           | He can write at home             |
| 2. He should write.      | How much?         | How much should he write?        |
|                          | Two pages         | He should write two pages.       |
| 3. He writes.            | When?             | When does he write?              |
|                          | In the morning    | He writes in the morning.        |
| 4. He'll write.          | What?             | What will he write?              |
|                          | A short report    | He'll write a short report.      |
| 5. He's writing.         | To whom?          | To whom is he writing?           |
|                          | Mr. Brown         | He's writing to Mr. Brown.       |
| 6. He must write.        | Why?              | Why must he write?               |
|                          | To apply for a    | He must he write?                |
| 7. He's written.         | How often?        | How often has he written?        |
|                          | Every six month   | He's written every six months.   |
| 8. He wrote.             | Which one?        | Which one did he write?          |
|                          | The long one      | He wrote the long one.           |
| 9. He was writing.       | What for?         | What was he writing for?         |
|                          | Because he had to | He was writing because he had to |
| 10. He'd better write.   | When?             | When had he better write?        |
|                          | Tonight           | He's going to write? a letter    |
| 11. He's going to write. | What?             | What's he going to write?        |
|                          | A letter?         | He's going to write a letter.    |
| 12. He plans to write.   | To whom?          | To whom does he plan to write?   |
|                          | Mary              | He plans to write to Mary.       |
| 13. He could write.      | How much?         | How much could he write?         |
|                          | Only two pages    | He could write only two pages.   |
| 14. He had to write.     | Why?              | Why did he have to write?        |
|                          | To satisfy them   | He had to write to satisfy them. |
| 15. He should write.     | What?             | What should write an apology.    |
|                          | An apology        | He should write an apology.      |
| 16. He used to write.    | How often?        | How often did he use to write?   |
|                          | Once a month      | He used to write once a month.   |

**Exercise 4**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Did he take that one?<br/>Which one?<br/>( ?? )</p>                  | <p>Which one did he take?<br/>He took that one.</p>                                 |
| <p>2. Is Bill going to the movies now?<br/>Where?<br/>(??)</p>             | <p>Where's Bill going now?<br/>He's going to the movies now.</p>                    |
| <p>3. Wasn't it there because of that?<br/>Why?<br/>(??)</p>               | <p>Why wasn't it there?<br/>It wasn't there because of that.</p>                    |
| <p>4. Should we complain to the manager?<br/>Whom?<br/>(?? )</p>           | <p>Whom should we complain to?<br/>We should complain to the manager</p>            |
| <p>5. Couldn't you get to Boston because of that?<br/>Why?<br/>(?? )</p>   | <p>Why couldn't you get to Boston?<br/>I couldn't get to Boston because of that</p> |
| <p>6. Did he come here four months ago?<br/>How long ago?<br/>(??)</p>     | <p>How long ago did he come here?<br/>He came here four months ago.</p>             |
| <p>7. Does she want her tea with cream?<br/>How?<br/>(??)</p>              | <p>How does she want her tea?<br/>She wants her tea with cream.</p>                 |
| <p>8. Is there a bus stop at the next corner?<br/>Where?<br/>(?? )</p>     | <p>Where's there a bus stop?<br/>There's a bus stop at the next corner.</p>         |
| <p>9. Should we buy groceries today?<br/>What?<br/>(??)</p>                | <p>What should we buy today?<br/>We should buy groceries today.</p>                 |
| <p>10. Did they use to get there by bus?<br/>How?<br/>(?? )</p>            | <p>How did they use to get there?<br/>They used to get there by bus.</p>            |
| <p>11. Did you have to travel for business reasons?<br/>Why?<br/>(?? )</p> | <p>Why did you have to travel?<br/>I had to travel for business reasons.</p>        |

## 93. IRREGULAR VERBS (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. Have you found a picture for your room yet?  
 S2. Yes lucky 'enough to find one yesterday.  
 S1. Have you put it on the wall yet?  
 S2. No, but I'm going to put it up this afternoon.

### Conversation B

- S1. Have you heard about Robert's bad luck?  
 S2. No. What happened to him?  
 S1. I hear he's lost his job.  
 S2. You can't believe everything you hear.

### Conversation C

- S1. Someone stole money from the company last month.  
 S2. Some money was stolen two months ago too.  
 S2. I think the person who's stealing money will be caught.  
 S1. John said he thought the police would catch the thief soon.

### Conversation D

- S1. Did you bring your umbrella today?  
 S2. No, but I brought my tan raincoat.  
 S1. Maybe Fred will lend me his umbrella.  
 S2. I think he's already lent his to someone.

### Conversation E

- S1. Have you ridden in Fred's new car yet?  
 S2. Yes, I have. I rode in it last night.  
 S1. Did Fred let you drive the car?  
 S2. Yes. I drove it around the block a couple of times.

### Exercise 1

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. Did you write the letter?   | Yes, I did. I wrote it yesterday.      |
| 2. Did he drive the car?       | Yes, he did. He drove it yesterday.    |
| 3. Did they do the work?       | Yes, they did. They did it yesterday.  |
| 4. Did she send the report?    | Yes, she did. She sent it yesterday.   |
| 5. Did you bring your money?   | Yes, I did. I brought it yesterday.    |
| 6. Did he read the article?    | Yes, he did. He read it yesterday.     |
| 7. Did she begin her work?     | Yes, she did. She began it yesterday.  |
| 8. Did they see the display?   | Yes, they did. They saw it yesterday.  |
| 9. Did he wear his raincoat?   | Yes, he did. He wore it yesterday.     |
| 10. Did you buy the bicycle?   | Yes, I did. I bought it yesterday.     |
| 11. Did they hold the meeting? | Yes, they did. They held it yesterday. |
| 12. Did she take the package?  | Yes, she did. She- took it yesterday.  |

- |     |                            |  |
|-----|----------------------------|--|
| 13. | Did she quit her job?      | Yes, she did. She quit it yesterday.   |
| 14. | Did he cut the rope?       | Yes, he did. He cut it yesterday.      |
| 15. | Did they draw the diagram? | Yes, they did. They drew it yesterday. |
| 16. | Did she get the message?   | Yes, she did. She got it yesterday.    |

### Exercise 2

- |     |                                |                                    |
|-----|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1.  | I forgot something yesterday.  | Have you forgotten anything today? |
| 2.  | I lost something yesterday.    | Have you lost anything today?      |
| 3.  | I began something yesterday.   | Have you begun anything today?     |
| 4.  | I sold something yesterday.    | Have you sold anything today?      |
| 5.  | I made something yesterday.    | Have you made anything today?      |
| 6.  | I took something yesterday.    | Have you taken anything today?     |
| 7.  | I won something yesterday.     | Have you won anything today?       |
| 8.  | I did something yesterday.     | Have you done anything today?      |
| 9.  | I read something yesterday.    | Have you read anything today?      |
| 10. | I wrote something yesterday.   | Have you written anything today?   |
| 11. | I built something yesterday.   | Have you built anything today?     |
| 12. | I sent something yesterday.    | Have you sent anything today?      |
| 13. | I broke something yesterday.   | Have you broken anything today?    |
| 14. | I brought something yesterday. | Have you brought anything today?   |
| 15. | I tore something yesterday.    | Have you torn anything today?      |
| 16. | I drew something yesterday.    | Have you drawn anything today?     |

### Exercise 3

- |     |                                 |   |
|-----|---------------------------------|---|
| 1.  | You do that work well.          | You've always done that work well.        |
| 2.  | The girl writes accurately.     | She's always written accurately.          |
| 3.  | The man tells funny jokes.      | He's always told funny jokes.             |
| 4.  | Those men drive carelessly.     | They've always driven carelessly.         |
| 5.  | He gives money to charity.      | He's...always given money to charity.     |
| 6.  | Tom sends reports to them.      | He's always sent reports to them.         |
| 7.  | The meetings begin on time.     | They've always begun on time.             |
| 8.  | The motor runs very smoothly.   | It's always run very smoothly.            |
| 9.  | She chooses clothes care fully. | She's always chosen clothes carefully.    |
| 10. | John reads the daily reports.   | He's always read the daily reports.       |
| 11. | You forget people's names.      | You've always forgotten people's names.   |
| 12. | Mary has trouble with that      | She's always had trouble with that.       |
| 13. | That man speaks rapidly.        | He's always spoken rapidly.               |
| 14. | I take good care of my car.     | I've always taken good care of my car.    |
| 15. | You eat breakfast very early.   | You've always eaten breakfast very early. |
| 16. | That man wears a hat to work.   | He's always worn a hat to work.           |

### Exercise 4

- |     |                              |                               |
|-----|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1.  | Has the man ever seen it?    | Yes. He saw it yesterday.     |
| 2.  | Have you broken one?         | Yes. I broke one yesterday.   |
| 3.  | Has Mary ever worn one?      | Yes. She wore one yesterday   |
| 4.  | Have the men heard it?       | Yes. They heard it yesterday. |
| 5.  | Has the leader begun yet?    | Yes. He began yesterday.      |
| 6.  | Have you ever driven one?    | Yes. I drove one yesterday.   |
| 7.  | Has your sister eaten there? | Yes. She ate there yesterday. |
| 8.  | Have the workers done it?    | Yes. They did it yesterday.   |
| 9.  | Have they ever sung it?      | Yes. They sang it yesterday.  |
| 10. | Has Mr. White sent it?       | Yes. He sent it yesterday.    |
| 11. | Have the people read it?     | Yes. They read it yesterday.  |

- |     |                          |                                |
|-----|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 12. | Has John made one?       | Yes. He made one yesterday.    |
| 13. | Has the girl bought one? | Yes. She bought one yesterday  |
| 14. | Have you spoken to him?  | Yes. I spoke to him yesterday. |

## 94. IRREGULAR VERBS (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Did you sell those people your house?  
S2. We finally sold it to them last week.  
S1. Have they given you the money yet?  
S2. Yes. They gave it to us just this morning.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Has Robert chosen a new suit yet?  
S2. He chose a very nice one on Saturday.  
S1. Has he worn his new suit yet?  
S2. He wore to the meeting yesterday.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Did Alice shut the window?  
S2. She shut it a short time ago.  
S1. She forgot it this morning.  
S2. No. She left it open on purpose.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Did you read the magazine?  
S2. Yes. We read it this morning.  
S1. Did you find the article I told you about?  
S2. We found it all right, but you didn't tell us it was so long.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Have you gone over that reading selection yet?  
S2. Yes. I went over it last weekend.  
S1. Did you understand everything in the essay?  
S2. I think I understood all the important parts.

## 95. IRREGULAR VERBS (3) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. Where did you (A) the package?  
 S2. I (B) (it in the closet).  
 S1. Would you please (C) it?  
 S2. I've (D) it already.

(A)	(B)	(C)	(D)
leave	left	open	opened
find	found	unwrap	unwrapped
set	set	move	moved
lay	laid	examine	examined
put	put	return	returned
hide	hid	inspect	inspected
see	saw	deliver	delivered
keep	kept	address	addressed

### Conversation Drill B

- S1. What's the matter?  
 S2. We've (A)  
 S1. We haven't (B) yet.  
 S2. I'm very surprised.

(A)	(B)
spent our money	spent ours
chosen a name	chosen one
seen that movie	seen it
had some food	had any
bought a ticket	bought one
read the papers	read them
done something	done anything
taken that course	taken it

## 96. IRREGULAR VERBS (4) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. What's on your mind?  
 S2. Why did you(A) \_\_\_\_\_  
 S1. I (B) that because it was necessary.  
 S2. Of course, you know I haven't(C) one right now.

### Conversation Drill B

- S1. Have you ever (A)one?  
 S2. Yes. In fact, I(B) one last week?  
 S1. I'm going to (C) one soon.  
 S2. John is (D) one right now.

(A)	(B)	(C)	(D)
written	Wrote	write	Writing
read	read	read	reading
worn	wore	wear	wearing
driven	drove	drive	driving
done	did	do	doing
given	gave	given	giving
brought		brought	bringing
taken	took	take	taking

## 97. COMPARISONS (1) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. I like this (A) very much.  
 S2. Did you see the other (B) ?  
 S1. Yes, but this (A) is (A) than the other one.  
 S2. I think it's (B) too.

(A)	(B)
chair	more comfortable
color	prettier
suitcase	more practical
sweater	warmer
sports car	less conservative
silverware	more modern
television set	better
refrigerator	more convenient

### Conversation Drill B

- S1. Did you like the last one we saw?  
 S2. Yes, I did. It's certainly very (A)  
 S1. It's as (A) as the first one, don't you think?  
 S2. In my opinion, it's (B) of all.

(A)	(B)
strong	the strongest
accurate	the most accurate
pretty	the prettiest
useful	the most useful
big	the biggest
unusual	the most unusual
comfortable	the most comfortable
nice	the nicest

## 98. COMPARISONS (2) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. I think John *is* quite (A) \_\_\_\_\_  
 S2. I've noticed he's doing things \_\_\_\_\_ (A) \_\_\_\_\_  
 S1. John is always (C) \_\_\_\_\_ than the others.  
 S2. I know he always does things more (B) \_\_\_\_\_ than I do.

(A)  
 patient  
 quick  
 accurate  
 deliberate  
 slow  
 awkward  
 neat  
 thorough

(B)  
 patiently  
 quickly  
 accurately  
 deliberately  
 slowly  
 awkwardly  
 neatly  
 thoroughly

(C)  
 more patient  
 quicker  
 more accurate  
 more deliberate  
 slower  
 more awkward  
 neater  
 more through

### Conversation Drill B

- S1. Isn't Mr. Black a (A) \_\_\_\_\_ person?  
 S2. Yes. He's certainly (B) \_\_\_\_\_  
 S1. In my opinion, he's the (C) \_\_\_\_\_ person in the group  
 S2. He certainly speaks more (D) \_\_\_\_\_ than the present chair man

(A)  
 wise  
 confident  
 calm  
 earnest  
 brave  
 cautious  
 kind  
 sensible

(B)  
 wiser  
 more confident  
 calmer  
 more earnest  
 braver  
 more cautious  
 kinder  
 more sensible

(C)  
 wisest  
 most confident  
 calmest  
 most earnest  
 bravest  
 most cautious  
 kindest  
 most sensible

(D)  
 wisely  
 confidently  
 calmly  
 earnestly  
 bravely  
 cautiously  
 kindly  
 sensibly

## 99. TWO-WORD VERBS (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. It's cold outside; I'm going to put on a sweater.  
 S2. You'd better put a coat on too.  
 S1. Yes, but we'd better take off our things when we're inside.  
 S2. We can take them off in the hall and hang them up.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Bill found out his application was turned down.  
 S2. Who turned it down, and how did he find out?  
 S1. The membership committee turned down his application.  
 S2. Oh, I see. Then he found out the answer from the secretary.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Did you take down the man's instructions?  
 S2. Yes. Do you want to look them over?  
 S1. Yes, please. I want to carry out his instructions as well as possible.  
 S2. All right. Let's sit down and go over them together.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Did you throw away the extra paper?  
 S2. No, I gave about half of it away.  
 S1. Do you have some left then?  
 S2. No, I used up all the rest yesterday.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Have you gone through the reports yet?  
 S2. No, I haven't. They were turned in just last night.  
 S1. Why don't you pick out a few for me to read then?  
 S2. I think I'll do that. I can use the help.

### *Exercise 1*

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. We'll think over the plan carefully"     | Well think it over carefully.   |
| 2. I've turned in the reports.              | I've turned them in.            |
| 3. Didn't she make out the form?            | Didn't she make it out?         |
| 4. Why can't I find out those things?       | Why can't I find them out?      |
| 5. Please don't point out the mistake.      | Please don't point it out.      |
| 6. It's hard to break in new employees.     | It's hard to break them in.     |
| 7. When did you use up the supplies?        | When did you use them up?       |
| 8. You'd better put on your sweater.        | You'd better put it on.         |
| 9. He couldn't take out those parts.        | He couldn't take them out.      |
| 10. Why won't she bring up the subject?     | Why won't she bring it up?      |
| 11. You're going to wear out your suit.     | You're going to wear it out.    |
| 12. It's necessary to look up the words.    | It's necessary to look them up. |
| 13. Didn't he carry out their instructions? | Didn't he carry them out?       |

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 14. I've already worked out a plan.           | I've already worked it out.          |
| 15. Please turn over your papers now.         | Please turn them over now.           |
| 16. Shouldn't you throwaway that rubbish?     | Shouldn't you throw it away?         |
| 17. The weather held up our flight.           | The weather held it up.              |
| 18. We'd better turn off the radio now.       | We'd better turn it off now.         |
| 19. Please put away the tools before leaving. | Please put them away before leaving. |

*Exercise 2*

- |                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Someone took it back.             | It was taken back.                  |
| 2. No one will try them out.         | They won't be tried out.            |
| 3. Someone has used .them up.        | They've been used up.               |
| 4. No one is taking it down.         | It isn't being taken down.          |
| 5. Someone ought to pick them out.   | They ought to be picked out.        |
| 6. No one will turn that down.       | That won't be turned down.          |
| 7. Someone was looking them over.    | They were being looked over.        |
| 8. Someone is going to hold that up. | That's going to be held up.         |
| 9. No one should bring it up.        | It shouldn't be brought up.         |
| 10. Someone has thrown them away.    | They've been thrown away.           |
| 11. No one has to clear that up.     | That doesn't have to be cleared up. |
| 12. Someone is giving them away.     | They're being given away.           |
| 13. No one was pointing that out.    | That wasn't being pointed out.      |
| 14. Someone will hand them           | They'll be handed in.               |
| 15. Someone will hand them           | It was crossed out.                 |
| 16. No one is taking them off.       | They aren't being taken off.        |

# 100. TWO-WORD VERBS (2) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

## Conversation Drills

- S1. What did you say did say?  
 S2. Would you please(A)?  
 S1. I(B) this morning.  
 S2. Sorry. I didn't realize that.

(A)  
 turned them off the lights  
 looked it over the report  
 crossed out those names  
 figure out the total cost  
 look up those words  
 bring up that matter  
 throw away those papers

(B)  
 turned them off  
 looked it over  
 crossed them out  
 figured it out  
 looked them up  
 brought it up  
 threw them away

## Conversation Drill B

- S1. What are you thinking about?  
 S2. I guess we'll have to (A)  
 S1. Exactly why do you have to (B)  
 S2. Because it's obviously important.

(A)  
 think over the plan  
 turn in the reports  
 make out the form  
 point out the mistakes  
 bring up the subject  
 carry out instructions  
 look up the answer  
 turn over the papers

(B)  
 think it over  
 turn them in  
 make it out  
 point them out  
 carry them out  
 carry them out  
 look it up  
 turn them over

# 101. TAG QUESTIONS (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. That isn't your jacket, is it?  
 S2. No, isn't, but it looks like mine.  
 S1. But these are your gloves, aren't they? The  
 S2. There were a lot of people at the reception, weren't there?

## *Conversation B*

- S1. There were a lot of people at the reception, weren't there?  
 S2. Yes, there were. Over 100. I'd guess.  
 S1. There wasn't, enough food for everyone, was there?  
 S2. No, there wasn't everyone complained.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. It rains a lot in this part of the country, doesn't it?  
 S2. Yes, it does, but only in the spring.  
 S1. But it doesn't ever snow around here, does it?  
 S2. No, it never does.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. You left the office very late, didn't you?  
 S2. Yes, I did. Around eleven o'clock.  
 S1. Then I didn't get much sleep, did you?  
 S2. John has been looking for a job, hasn't he?

## *Conversation E*

- S1. John has been looking for a job, hasn't he?  
 S2. Yes, he has. Quite diligently too?  
 S1. He hasn't found a suitable one yet, has he?  
 S2. No, he hasn't, but I'm sure he will soon.

## *Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

That isn't your jacket.  
 Those aren't your gloves.  
 This isn't your coat.  
 These aren't your shoes.  
 That isn't your hat.  
 Those aren't your books.

That isn't your jacket, is it?  
 Those aren't your gloves, are they?  
 This isn't your coat, is it?  
 These aren't your shoes, are they?  
 That isn't your hat, is it?  
 Those aren't your books, are they?

## *Exercise 2 / Lines A1 and A3 /*

That's your jacket.  
 Those are your gloves.

That's your jacket, isn't it?  
 Those are your gloves, aren't they?

This is your coat.  
 These are your shoes.  
 That's your hat.  
 Those are your books.

This is your coat, isn't it?  
 These are your shoes, aren't they?  
 hat's your hat, isn't it?  
 Those are your books, aren't they?

**Exercise 3 / Lines A1-A4 /**

That's your jacket, isn't it?  
 That isn't your coat, is it?  
 Those are your gloves, aren't they?  
 Those aren't your books, are they?  
 This is your hat, isn't it?  
 These aren't your shoes, are they?

Yes, it is.  
 No, it isn't.  
 Yes, they are.  
 No, they aren't.  
 Yes, it is.  
 No, they aren't.

**Exercise 4 / Lines A1-A4 /**

1. Those are your books (?)
2. That isn't your jacket (?)
3. That's your hat (?)
4. Those aren't your gloves (?)
5. These are your shoes (?)

Those are your books, aren't they?  
 Yes, they are. They're my books.  
 That isn't your jacket, is it?  
 No, it isn't. It isn't my jacket.  
 That's your hat, isn't it?  
 Yes, it is. It's my hat.  
 Those aren't your gloves, are they?  
 No, they aren't. They aren't my gloves.  
 These are your shoes, aren't they?  
 Yes, they are. They're my shoes.

**Exercise 5 / Line C1 /**

It rains a lot here.  
 The men worked there.  
 John likes television.  
 The wind blew very hard.  
 The girls enjoy that class.  
 That caused the trouble.

It rains a lot here, doesn't it?  
 The men worked there, didn't they?  
 John likes television, doesn't he?  
 The wind blew very hard, didn't it?  
 The girls enjoy that class, don't they?  
 That caused the trouble, didn't it?

**Exercise 6 / Line C3 /**

It doesn't rain much. here.  
 The men didn't work there.  
 John doesn't like television.  
 The wind didn't blow hard.  
 The girls don't enjoy the class.

It doesn't rain much here, does it?  
 The men didn't work there, did they?  
 John doesn't like television, does he?  
 The wind didn't blow hard, did it?  
 The girls don't enjoy the class, do they?

**Exercise 7 / Lines C1-C3 /**

It rains a lot here, doesn't it? Yes, it does.  
 The girls don't enjoy the class, do they? No, they don't.  
 That caused the trouble, didn't it? Yes, it did.  
 The men didn't work there, did they? No, they didn't.  
 The wind blew hard, didn't it? Yes, it did.  
 John doesn't like television, does he? No, he doesn't.

**Exercise 8 / Lines A1-A4 and C1-C3 /**

They work hard, don't they? Yes, they do.

They're working hard, aren't they?	Yes, they are.
They don't work hard, do they?	No, they don't.
They aren't working hard, are they?	No, they aren't.
She writes letters, doesn't she?	Yes, she does.
She's writing letters, isn't she?	Yes, she is.
She doesn't write letters, does she?	No, she doesn't.
She isn't writing letters, is she?	No, she isn't.

**Exercise / Lines C1-C3 /**

1. The girls enjoy that class (?) The girls enjoy that class, don't they?  
Yes, they do. They enjoy Class
2. The men didn't work there (?) The men didn't work there, did they?  
No, they didn't. They didn't work there.
3. The wind blew very hard (?) The wind blew very hard, didn't it?  
Yes, it did. It blew very hard.
4. John doesn't like television (?) John doesn't like television, does he?  
No, he doesn't. He doesn't like television.
5. It rains a lot here (?) It rains a lot here, doesn't it?  
Yes, it does. It rains a lot here
6. That didn't cause the trouble. That didn't cause the trouble, id it?  
No, it didn't. It didn't cause the trouble.

## 102. TAG QUESTIONS (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. There haven't been any storms recently, have there?  
 S2. No, there haven't, but it's hard to believe.  
 S1. I suppose we could get one anytime now, couldn't we?  
 S2. We certainly could. This is the season.

### Conversation B

- S1. Not many people in that office speak English, do they?  
 S2. No, they don't, but all of them are taking classes now.  
 S1. According to the rules, all employees have to learn it now, I  
 S2. Yes, they all do, and it's a problem.

### Conversation C

- S1. She's already told John she'd like to go, hasn't she?  
 S2. Yes, she has  
 S1. I guess we should plan on it then, shouldn't we?  
 S2. yes, we'd better, I think.

### Conversation D

- S1. You hadn't ever seen the Ambassador before last night, had you?  
 S2. No, I hadn't, although I did see John's pictures of him in May.  
 S1. You could have met him at the last conference, couldn't you?  
 S2. Ye, I could have, but I lost my nerve at the last moment.

### Conversation E

- S1. We'd better tell someone about this, hadn't we?  
 S2. Yes, I guess we'd better, but who?  
 S1. The director wouldn't be very sympathetic, would he  
 S2. No. I'm afraid he wouldn't

### Exercise 1

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. It isn't raining now.           | It isn't raining now, is it?              |
| 2. John didn't read that.          | John didn't read that, did he?            |
| 3. The girls weren't ready.        | The girls weren't ready, were they?       |
| 4. The people haven't seen it.     | The people haven't seen it, have they?    |
| 5. There weren't any mistakes.     | There weren't any mistakes, were there?   |
| 6. They won't try that.            | They won't try that, will they?           |
| 7. She can't come tomorrow.        | She can't come tomorrow, can she?         |
| 8. Mary doesn't enjoy that.        | Mary doesn't enjoy that, does she?        |
| 9. Those aren't your books.        | Those aren't your books, are she?         |
| 10. He didn't go to the lecture.   | He didn't go to the lecture, did he?      |
| 11. You haven't done that yet.     | You haven't done that yet, have you?      |
| 12. Mary doesn't walk to work.     | Mary doesn't walk to work, does she?      |
| 13. There wasn't enough food left. | There wasn't enough food left, was there? |

14. The train hasn't arrived yet.
15. The men couldn't help him.
16. They aren't working now.

The train hasn't arrived yet, has it?  
 The men couldn't help him, could they?  
 They aren't working now, are they?

### Exercise 2

1. The man can help us.
2. Mary lives near your house.
3. The boys are studying now.
4. John waited for his friend.
5. They'll be at the conference.
6. There was enough coffee.
7. The girl saw the movie.
8. Students should study hard.
9. You're going to leave soon.
10. He usually rides on the bus.
11. They went home quite late.
12. You've done that lesson.
13. You'll be able to do that.
14. They had trouble with it.
15. That's your briefcase.
16. He has to work tonight.

The man can help us, can't he?  
 Mary lives near your house, doesn't she?  
 The boys are studying now, aren't they?  
 John waited for his friend, didn't he?  
 They'll be at the conference, won't they?  
 There was enough coffee, wasn't there?  
 The girl saw the movie, didn't she?  
 Students should study hard, shouldn't they?  
 You're going to leave soon aren't they?  
 He usually rides on the bus, doesn't he?  
 They went home quite late, didn't they?  
 You've done that lesson, haven't you?  
 You'll be able to do that, won't you?  
 They had trouble with it, didn't they?  
 That's your briefcase, isn't it?  
 He has to work tonight, doesn't he?

### Exercise 3

1. The men are working now (?)
2. John didn't read that. ( ?)
3. The girl writes carefully (?)
4. It isn't raining now (?)
5. They've seen the movie (?)
6. The man can help us (?)
7. Mary didn't wait for you (?)
8. You've done that lesson (?)
9. He didn't leave early (?)
10. They should try that (?)
11. She doesn't walk to work (?)
12. John went home late (?)
13. Those aren't his books (?)
14. She's going to practice (?)
15. You'll be at the meeting (?)

The men are working now, aren't they?  
 Yes, they are. They're working now.  
 John didn't read that, did he?  
 No, he didn't. He didn't read that.  
 The girl writes carefully, doesn't she?  
 Yes, she does. She writes carefully.  
 It isn't raining now, is it?  
 No, it isn't. It isn't raining now  
 They've seen the movie, haven't they?  
 The man can help us, can't he?  
 Yes, he can. He can help us  
 Mary didn't wait for you, did she?  
 No, she didn't. She didn't wait for me.  
 You've done that lesson, haven't you?  
 Yes, I have. I've done that lesson.  
 He didn't leave early, did he?  
 No, he didn't. He didn't leave early.  
 They should try that, shouldn't they?  
 Yes, they should. They should try that.  
 She doesn't walk to work, does she?  
 No, she doesn't. She doesn't walk to work?  
 John went home late, didn't he?  
 Yes, he did. He went home late.  
 Those aren't his books, are they?  
 No, they aren't. They aren't his books.  
 She's going to practice, isn't she?  
 Yes, she is. She's going to practice.  
 You'll be at the meeting, won't you?

# 103. SHORT ADDITIONS (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. My friend can speak French.  
 S2. Alice can too.  
 S1. But my friend can't speak German.  
 S2. Alice can't either.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. We went to the concert last night.  
 S2. We did too.  
 S1. But we didn't get there on time.  
 S2. We didn't either.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. I met that government official from Japan.  
 S2. So did.  
 S1. But I didn't meet his wife.  
 S2. Neither did.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. They're going to go to the beach today.  
 S2. I am too.  
 S1. They're also going to go to the amusement park.  
 S2. So am I.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. We've already done that lesson.  
 S2. So have we  
 S1. But we haven't done the other one yet.  
 S2. Neither have we.

## *Exercise 1*

- |                                   |                |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. He learned all the words.      | We did too.    |
| 2. They're copying the sentences. | We are too.    |
| 3. You've watched that program.   | We have too.   |
| 4. She should accept the offer.   | We should too. |
| 5. They can work at the library.  | We can too.    |
| 6. John found the answer.         | We did too.    |
| 7. She studies every evening.     | We do too.     |
| 8. They had to be at the meeting. | We did too.    |
| 9. You've read that novel.        | We have too.   |
| 10. He got very good results.     | We did too.    |
| 11. They can do that easily.      | We can too.    |
| 12. She's working on that part.   | We are too.    |
| 13. He'll speak to Mr. Wilson.    | We will too.   |

- |                                   |              |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| 14. They're going to leave soon.  | We are too.  |
| 15. She enjoys that T.V. program. | We do too.   |
| 16. He's written to the company.  | We have too. |
| 17. He's writing to the company.  | We are too.  |
| 18. He writes lots of letters.    | We do too.   |

**Exercise 2**

- |                                     |                 |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. We've enjoyed everything so far. | So have they.   |
| 2. She's going to speak to you.     | So are they.    |
| 3. You helped him very much.        | So did they.    |
| 4. I knew all the answers.          | So did they.    |
| 5. She doing the lesson now.        | So are they.    |
| 6. He can explain it to you.        | So can they.    |
| 7. We'll be at the meeting.         | So will they.   |
| 8. I have enough time for that.     | So do they.     |
| 9. She should come with us.         | So should they. |
| 10. We have to leave quite early.   | So do they.     |
| 11. You've done well up to now.     | So have they.   |
| 12. He's going to walk to work.     | So are they.    |
| 13. I was quite worried about that. | So were they.   |
| 14. We like to listen to music.     | So do they.     |
| 15. She's already read that book.   | So have they.   |
| 16. You can ride home with us.      | So can they.    |
| 17. We could wait for you.          | So could they.  |
| 18. She appreciates your help.      | So do they.     |

**Exercise 3**

- |                                       |                     |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. He didn't follow the instructions. | I don't either.     |
| 2. They aren't working on that now.   | I'm not either.     |
| 3. She hasn't taken the course yet.   | I haven't either.   |
| 4. John doesn't often do that.        | I don't either.     |
| 5. They mind the changes.             | I didn't either.    |
| 6. She can't understand that part.    | I can't either.     |
| 7. He isn't working very hard.        | I'm not either.     |
| 8. They won't be able to attend.      | I won't either.     |
| 9. She shouldn't try to do that.      | I shouldn't either. |
| 10. John doesn't have to work.        | I don't either.     |
| 11. Mary hasn't heard anything yet.   | I haven't either.   |
| 12. They can't possibly go there.     | I can't either.     |
| 13. They don't believe his excuse.    | I don't either.     |
| 14. John wasn't at the meeting.       | I wasn't either.    |
| 15. They aren't ready to go yet.      | I'm not either.     |
| 16. They haven't had any trouble.     | I haven't either.   |
| 17. You won't have any trouble.       | I won't either.     |
| 18. She isn't watching that.          | I'm not either.     |

**Exercise 4**

- |                                  |                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. We didn't read the article.   | Neither did he. |
| 2. Mary hasn't seen- that movie. | Neither has he. |
| 3. I'm not going to mention it.  | Neither is he.  |

4. You don't often try that.
5. We won't say anything to her.
6. I don't enjoy that kind of music.
7. I can't understand the lesson.
8. We haven't heard anything yet.
9. You don't have to stay here.
10. I'm not ready to leave yet.
11. She can't help them right now.
12. You shouldn't try to do that.
13. You didn't answer my question.
14. She won't be able go tomorrow.
15. They aren't working right now.
16. They weren't at the conference.
17. They won't be at the concert.
18. We can't finish it on time.

Neither does he.  
Neither will he.  
Neither does he  
Neither can he.  
Neither has he  
Neither does he  
Neither is he  
Neither can he  
Neither should he.  
Neither did he  
Neither will he  
Neither is he  
Neither was he  
Neither will he  
Neither can he

## 104. SHORT ADDITIONS (2) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### *Conversation Drill A*

- S1. What do you think?  
 S2. I suspect that Mary - (A).  
 S1. I'm sure that John - (B).  
 S2. Let's ask them about it to be sure.

(A)  
 took many pictures  
 can't avoid that  
 wants to change it  
 wasn't aware of this  
 has to ask permission  
 won't agree with us  
 is going to object  
 couldn't attend

(B)  
 did too  
 can't either  
 does too  
 wasn't either  
 does too  
 won't either  
 is too  
 couldn't either

### *Conversation Drill B*

- S1. What's your opinion about him?  
 S2. It's quite clear that he - (A).  
 S1. (B) - the other workers, I suspect.  
 S2. That's probably correct.

(A)  
 took the things  
 didn't read the report  
 has seen something  
 can't handle it  
 will object to that  
 has to give it up soon  
 isn't cooperating at all  
 wants something

(B)  
 so did  
 neither did  
 so have  
 neither can  
 so will  
 so do  
 neither are  
 so do

# 105. VERB NOT REPEATED (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

## *Conversation A*

- S1. Do they know his name?  
 S2. I don't think so. Do you?  
 S1. Of course. Don't you?  
 S2. Sure. It's Mr. Smith.

## *Conversation B*

- S1. Didn't the men finish the work?  
 S2. I don't think they did.  
 S1. Do they expect us to do it?  
 S2. I certainly hope they don't.

## *Conversation C*

- S1. I didn't have enough time to speak to Mr. Fox.  
 S2. Why didn't you?  
 S1. Because I had to leave quite early.  
 S2. So did I, but I had enough time.

## *Conversation D*

- S1. Not many people heard the lecture, and I didn't either.  
 S2. Well, I did, and so did Fred.  
 S1. Did Mary and John?  
 S2. I don't think they did.

## *Conversation E*

- S1. Did you go to work yesterday?  
 S2. No, I just couldn't.  
 S1. Why couldn't you?  
 S2. I didn't feel very well at all.

## *Exercise 1 / Lines A1 and A2 /*

Do they know his name?  
 Have they spoken to him?  
 Did they meet him?  
 Can they convince him?  
 Will they be seeing him?  
 Are they annoyed at him?

No. Do you?  
 No. Have you?  
 No. Did you?  
 No. Can you?  
 No. Will you?  
 No. Are you?

## *Exercise 2 / Lines B1 and B2 /*

Didn't the men finish the work.  
 Haven't the men finished the work?  
 Aren't the men finishing the work?

I don't think they did.  
 I don't think they have.  
 I don't think they are.

Won't the men finish the work?  
 Can't the men finish the work?  
 Weren't the men finishing the work?

I don't think they will.  
 I don't think they can.  
 I don't think they were.

*Exercise 3 / Line B3 /*

Do they expect us to do it?

want  
 Advise  
 urge  
 Intend  
 Wish

Do they want us to do it?  
 Do they advise us to do it?  
 Do they urge us to do it?  
 Do they intend us to do it?  
 Do they wish us to do it?

*Exercise 4 / Line D 1 /*

They didn't hear it.  
 They haven't seen it.  
 They won't be there.  
 They don't enjoy it.  
 They aren't studying now.  
 They can't go with him.

I didn't either.  
 I haven't either.  
 I won't either.  
 I don't either.  
 I'm not either.  
 I can't either

*Exercise 5 / Line D2 /*

They heard it.  
 They've seen it.  
 They'll be there.  
 They enjoy it.  
 They're studying now.  
 They call go with him.

So did John.  
 So has John.  
 So will John.  
 So does John.  
 So is John.  
 So can John.

**Exercise 6**

1. I'm quite hungry now.
2. I work eight hours every day.
3. I could understand everything.
4. I went to the meeting.
5. I was very uncomfortable.
6. I studied the lesson carefully.
7. I'll be at the meeting early.
8. I plan to meet the men.
9. I can leave almost any time.
10. I've seen that movie already
11. I have to go back very soon.
12. I'd like to go home early.

Are you?	Aren't you?
Do you?	Don't you?
Could you?	Couldn't you?
Did you?	Didn't you?
Were you?	Weren't you?
Did you?	Didn't you?
Will you?	Won't you?
Do you?	Don't you?
Can you?	Can't you?
Have you?	Haven't you?
Do you?	Don't you?
Would you?	Wouldn't you?

**Exercise 7**

- |                       |                  |         |
|-----------------------|------------------|---------|
| 1. I don't do it.     | Why don't you?   | I do.   |
| 2. I haven't done it. | Why haven't you? | I have. |
| 3. I won't do it.     | Why won't you?   | I will. |
| 4. I didn't do it.    | Why didn't you?  | I did.  |
| 5. I wasn't doing it. | Why weren't you? | I was.  |

- |     |                         |                   |          |
|-----|-------------------------|-------------------|----------|
| 6.  | I can't do it.          | Why can't you?    | I can.   |
| 7.  | I'm not doing it.       | Why aren't you?   | I am.    |
| 8.  | I wouldn't do it.       | Why wouldn't you? | I would. |
| 9.  | I'm not going to do it. | Why aren't you?   | I am.    |
| 10. | I don't plan to do it.  | Why don't you?    | I do.    |
| 11. | I haven't done it.      | Why haven't you?  | I have.  |
| 12. | I don't have to do it.  | Why don't you?    | I do.    |
| 13. | I wasn't doing it.      | Why weren't you?  | I was.   |
| 14. | I won't do it.          | Why won't you?    | I will.  |
| 15. | I don't do it.          | Why don't you?    | I do.    |
| 16. | I'm not going to do it. | Why aren't you?   | I am.    |

## 106. VERB NOT REPEATED (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. They won't be very busy, but we will.  
 S2. I will too, but my brother won't.  
 S1. We can't possibly go, but they can.  
 S2. My brother can too, but I can't.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. My friend writes his reports on Monday, but I don't.  
 S2. Mr. Johnson doesn't either.  
 S1. I don't have enough time on Monday, but my friend does.  
 S2. Apparently Mr. Johnson does too.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Most of my friends will be at the meeting, but I won't.  
 S2. Neither will my sister, but I will if I have time.  
 S1. My friends didn't attend the last meeting, but I did.  
 S2. My sister did too, but I didn't.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. I haven't seen that movie yet.  
 S2. You really ought to.  
 S1. I plan to tomorrow.  
 S2. It's an excellent film in my opinion.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. I don't often visit museums, but I like to whenever possible.  
 S2. I've never visited the Modern Museum, but I plan to tomorrow.  
 S1. I can go with you tomorrow if you want me to.  
 S2. Fine. I'd be glad to have company.

### *Exercise 1 / Line A1 /*

- |                                |               |
|--------------------------------|---------------|
| They'll be busy.               | But I won't.  |
| They won't be busy.            | But I will.   |
| They're studying now.          | But I'm not.  |
| They aren't studying now.      | But I am.     |
| They walk to the office.       | But I don't.  |
| They don't walk to the office. | But I do.     |
| They're ready for that.        | But I'm not.  |
| They aren't ready for that.    | But I am.     |
| They waited for the girl.      | But I didn't. |
| They didn't wait for the girl. | But I did.    |

### *Exercise 2 / Lines D3, E1, E2 /*

I plan to see it tomorrow.  
 I hope to see it tomorrow.  
 I expect to see it tomorrow.  
 I want to see it tomorrow.  
 I intend to see it tomorrow.  
 I prefer to see it tomorrow.  
 I have to see it tomorrow.

I plan to tomorrow.  
 I hope to tomorrow.  
 I expect to tomorrow.  
 I want to tomorrow.  
 I intend to tomorrow.  
 I prefer to tomorrow.  
 I have to tomorrow.

*Exercise 3 / Line D1 /*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. I haven't seen that movie yet.<br/>         want<br/>         like</p> <p>2. I haven't heard that program yet.<br/>         want<br/>         like</p> <p>3. I haven't eaten there yet.<br/>         want<br/>         like</p> <p>4. I haven't tried that method yet.<br/>         want<br/>         like</p> <p>5. I haven't bought the tickets yet.<br/>         want<br/>         like</p> | <p>I want to see it soon.<br/>         I'd like to see it soon.</p> <p>I want to hear it soon.<br/>         I'd like to hear it soon.</p> <p>I want to eat there soon.<br/>         I'd like to eat there soon.</p> <p>I want to try it soon.<br/>         I'd like to try it soon.</p> <p>I want to buy them soon.<br/>         I'd like to buy them soon.</p> |
|--|---|

*Exercise 4*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. They saw the parade, but John didn't see it.</p> <p>2. They didn't take the course, but John took it.</p> <p>3. They're watching TV, but John isn't watching TV.</p> <p>4. They've been to the museum, but John hasn't been there.</p> <p>5. They aren't studying that lesson, but John is studying it.</p> <p>6. They haven't done that part, but John has done it.</p> <p>7. They'll be at the meeting, but John won't be there.</p> <p>8. They won't drive to the park, but John will drive there.</p> | <p>They saw the parade, but John didn't.</p> <p>They didn't take the course, but John did.</p> <p>They're watching TV, but John isn't.</p> <p>They've been to the museum, but John hasn't.</p> <p>They aren't studying that lesson, but John is.</p> <p>They haven't done that part, but John has.</p> <p>They'll be at the meeting, but John won't.</p> <p>They won't drive to the park, but John will.</p> |
|---|--|

*Exercise 5*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Do John and you write reports?</p> <p>2. Have John and you seen the show?</p> <p>3. Are John and you working on that?</p> <p>4. Did John and you leave early?</p> <p>5. Were John and you late today?</p> <p>6. Are John and you going to do it?</p> | <p>He does, but I don't.</p> <p>He has, but I haven't.</p> <p>He is, but I'm not.</p> <p>He did, but I didn't.</p> <p>He was, but I wasn't.</p> <p>He is, but I'm not.</p> |
|--|--|

- |     |                                       |                           |
|-----|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 7.  | Do John and you have to go?           | He does, but I don't.     |
| 8.  | Were John and you writing then?       | He was, but I wasn't.     |
| 9.  | Could John and you understand him?    | He could, but I couldn't. |
| 10. | Would John and you care to go?        | He would, but I wouldn't. |
| 11. | Will John and you be there to- night? | He will, but I won't.     |
| 12. | Can John and you come with me?        | He can, but I can't.      |
| 13. | Have John you been there yet?         | He has, but I haven't.    |
| 14. | Do John and you study at home?        | He does, but I don't.     |
| 15. | Are John and you satisfied with it?   | He is, but I'm not.       |
| 16. | Did and you buy new books?            | He did, but I didn't.     |

## 107. VERB NOT REPEATED (3) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. My friend doesn't work very hard.  
 S2. Do you?  
 S1. Of course I do.  
 S2. Well, I don't. I hate to work.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. I always try to be careful.  
 S2. I usually do too.  
 S1. Do you always check your work several times?  
 S2. I usually do, but once in a while, I don't.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. I finished my work on time.  
 S2. No one else did.  
 S1. That's not entirely true.  
 S2. You're right. John did too, didn't he?

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Don't you like to dance?  
 S2. Of course I do.  
 S3. Then why don't you come to the dance?  
 S4. I really can't.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. When can the manager see me?  
 S2. Can you come at eleven o'clock this morning?  
 S1. No, but I can any time after two.  
 S2. Then I'll put your name down for two thirty.

### *Exercise 1 / Lines A1 and A2 /*

- |                                     |           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| My friend doesn't work very hard.   | Do you?   |
| My friend can't go to the meeting.  | Can you?  |
| My friend won't be at the party.    | Will you? |
| My friend hasn't read the article.  | Have you? |
| My friend didn't write any letters. | Did you?  |
| My friend isn't taking any courses. | Are you?  |

### *Exercise 2 / Lines A2 and A3 /*

- |                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| Do you work very hard? | Of course I do: |
|------------------------|-----------------|

Can you go to the meeting?  
 Will you be at the party?  
 Have you read the article?  
 Did you write any letters?  
 Are you taking any courses?

Of course I can.  
 Of course I will.  
 Of course I have.  
 Of course I did.  
 Of course I am.

*Exercise 3 / Lines A1 and A4 /*

My friend works hard.  
 My friend can go to the meeting.  
 My friend will be at the party.  
 My friend has read the article.  
 My friend writes letters.

He works hard, but I don't.  
 He can go to the meeting, but I can't.  
 He'll be at the party; but I won't.  
 He's read the article, but I haven't.  
 He writes letters, but I don't.

*Exercise 4 / Line A4 /*

I hate to work.

enjoy  
 want  
 avoid  
 refuse  
 put off  
 intend  
 plan  
 suggest  
 promise

I enjoy working.  
 I want to work.  
 I avoid working.  
 I refuse to work.  
 I put off working.  
 I intend to work.  
 I plan to work.  
 I suggest working.  
 I promise to work.

*Exercise 5*

- |     |  |   |
|-----|--|---|
| 1.  | We don't own a car yet,<br>but we hope to own one.                 | We don't own a car yet, but<br>we hope to.                |
| 2.  | Peter drives to school, but I<br>can't afford to drive to school.  | Peter drives to school, but I<br>can't afford to.         |
| 3.  | I haven't heard from John,<br>but I expect to hear from him.       | I haven't heard from John,<br>but I expect to.            |
| 4.  | She didn't finish all the work,<br>but she's going to finish it.   | She didn't finish all the work,<br>but she's going to.    |
| 5.  | He'd like to go with them, but<br>he doesn't plan to go with them. | He'd like to go with them,<br>but he doesn't plan to.     |
| 6.  | They don't try very hard,<br>but they ought to try hard.           | They don't try very hard, but<br>they ought to.           |
| 7.  | We haven't taken it yet,<br>but we really intend to take it.       | We haven't taken it yet, but<br>we really intend to.      |
| 8.  | He doesn't smoke cigars,<br>but he used to smoke cigars.           | He doesn't smoke cigars, but<br>he used to.               |
| 9.  | I want to review the lesson<br>because I need to review it.        | I want to review the lesson<br>because I need to.         |
| 10. | He didn't study yesterday<br>because he didn't want to study.      | He didn't study yesterday because<br>he didn't want to.   |
| 11. | He has to stay home tonight, but<br>we don't have to stay home.    | He has to stay home tonight,<br>but we don't have to.     |
| 12. | They'd like to do it today, but<br>they won't be able to do it.    | They'd like to do it today,<br>but they won't be able to. |
| 13. | I'm not going to go there,<br>but I'd like to go there.            | I'm not going to go there, but<br>I'd like to.            |

## 108. VERB NOT REPEATED (8) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. I would like to finish every thing today.  
 S2. Will you be able to?  
 S1. I think so.  
 S2. I hope so, because it's rather urgent.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Didn't Mary finish the work?  
 S2. I don't think so.  
 S1. Does he expect us to finish it?  
 S2. I hope not.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. We should invite them, but we don't want to.  
 S2. I understand your problem.  
 S1. They're extremely boring, don't you think?  
 S2. I'm afraid so.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Do you understand the instructions?  
 S2. I think I do.  
 S1. Does your friend, Peter?  
 S2. No. He doesn't seem to.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. Why should I ask for permission to leave?  
 S2. Everyone has to.  
 S1. I don't have to.  
 S2. Yes, you do. Everyone does.

### *Exercise 1*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. They've left already.<br>appear         | Have they left already?<br>It appears so.         |
| 2. They won't return today.<br>appear      | Won't they return today?<br>It doesn't appear so. |
| 3. They'll finish the work.<br>think       | Will they finish the work?<br>I think so.         |
| 4. They didn't take the books.<br>think    | Didn't they take the books?<br>I don't think so.  |
| 5. They were watching the game.<br>believe | Were they watching the game?<br>I believe so.     |
| 6. They aren't studying now.<br>believe    | Aren't they studying now?<br>I don't believe so.  |

- |     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
| 7.  | They haven't read the book.<br>seem          | Haven't they' read the book?<br>It doesn't seem so.    |
| 8.  | They're going to leave soon.<br>seem         | Are they going to leave soon?<br>It seems so.          |
| 9.  | They'll finish the work on time.<br>Presume  | Will they finish the work on time?<br>I presume so.    |
| 10. | They can't afford a new car.<br>think        | Can't they afford a new car?<br>I don't think so.      |
| 11. | They're guarding money.<br>hope              | Are they guarding the money?<br>I hope so.             |
| 12. | They agree with us.<br>suppose               | Do they agree with us?<br>I suppose so.                |
| 13. | They've written the report.<br>assume        | Have they written the report?<br>I assume so.          |
| 14. | They didn't ask questions.<br>think          | Didn't they ask questions?<br>I don't think so.        |
| 15. | They can't assist their friend.<br>believe   | Can't they assist their friend?<br>I don't believe so. |
| 16. | They've offered their assistance.<br>presume | Have they offered their assistance?<br>I presume so.   |

## 109. ACTIVE VS. PASSIVE VERBS (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. By whom is the telephone answered?  
 S2. The secretary usually answers it.  
 S1. Who opens the mail every day?  
 S2. It's opened by the office manager

### *Conversation B*

- S1. Was the letter written yesterday?  
 S2. I'm sorry, I didn't hear you.  
 S1. Did anyone write the letter yesterday?  
 S2. I'm afraid not.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Were the reports read by all the employees?  
 S2. Yes. Everyone in this office read them.  
 S1. I think the reports should be posted in a better place.  
 S2. Let's post them right by the door next time.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Will the repair work be done on time?  
 S2. Yes. The men will do it tomorrow.  
 S1. Has the work been started yet?  
 S2. The men started it just this morning.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. The loud noise frightened us.  
 S2. We were frightened by the noise too.  
 S1. Has anyone investigated it?  
 S2. I don't think it's been investigated yet.

### *Exercise 1*

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. The reports were corrected.     | Someone corrected them.      |
| 2. The machine is inspected.       | Someone inspects it.         |
| 3. The students will be assisted.  | Someone will assist them.    |
| 4. The girl has been notified.     | Someone has notified her.    |
| 5. The men are being instructed.   | Someone is instructing them. |
| 6. The mirror was broken.          | Someone broke it.            |
| 7. The letters will be examined.   | Someone will examine them.   |
| 8. Mr. Smith was warned.           | Someone warned him.          |
| 9. The work is being done.         | Someone is doing it.         |
| 10. The assignments are corrected. | Someone corrects them.       |
| 11. The problem has been solved.   | Someone has solved it.       |
| 12. The message can be sent.       | Someone can send it.         |

- |                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 13. The people were advised.     | Someone advised them.    |
| 14. Mrs. Brown will be invited.  | Someone will invite her. |
| 15. The papers are being copied. | Someone is copying them. |
| 16. The motor can be repaired.   | Someone can repair it.   |

**Exercise 2**

- |                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Someone broke the mirror.          | It was broken.            |
| 2. Someone will examine the letters.  | They'll be examined.      |
| 3. Someone is instructing the men.    | They're being instructed. |
| 4. Someone has solved the problem.    | It's been solved.         |
| 5. Someone inspects the machine.      | It's inspected.           |
| 6. Someone will invite the lady.      | She'll be invited.        |
| 7. Someone corrected the reports.     | They were corrected.      |
| 8. Someone can send the message.      | It can be sent.           |
| 9. Someone is copying the papers.     | They're being copied.     |
| 10. Someone has notified the man.     | He's been notified.       |
| 11. Someone will assist the students. | They'll be assisted.      |
| 12. Someone warned the girl.          | She was warned.           |
| 13. Someone is doing the work.        | It's being done.          |
| 14. Someone can repair the motor.     | It can be repaired.       |
| 15. Someone advised the people.       | They were advised.        |

## 110. ACTIVE VS. PASSIVE VERBS (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. I was embarrassed by Peter's comments.  
 S2. His comments embarrassed me too.  
 S1. Why wasn't he warned not to say anything?  
 S2. He was. I warned him.

### Conversation B

- S1. Has the report been completed yet?  
 S2. Yes. It was completed yesterday.  
 S1. Who'll distribute the confidential staff copies?  
 S2. They'll probably be distributed by Mr. White.

### Conversation C

- S1. We were confused by the fast action.  
 S2. There were plenty of confused people at that moment.  
 S1. The action didn't confuse those two men over there.  
 S2. They never get confused over anything.

### Conversation D

- S1. Is much attention being given to that problem?  
 S2. Yes. The committee is devoting a lot of time to it.  
 S1. They aren't treating the matter lightly, are they?  
 S2. I'm quite sure the matter isn't being treated lightly.

### Conversation E

- S1. Who permitted you to leave early?  
 S2. The foreman gave us permission to leave.  
 S1. Why were you given permission to leave?  
 S2. Because we had finished all the work for the day.

### Exercise 1

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | They were hidden.<br>No one hid them.                   | Someone hid them.<br>They weren't hidden.              |
| 2. | She hasn't been informed.<br>Some one has informed her. | No one has informed her.<br>She's been informed.       |
| 3. | I'm being deceived.<br>No one is deceiving me.          | Some one is deceiving me.<br>I'm not being deceived.   |
| 4. | They won't be assisted.<br>Someone will assist them.    | No one will assist them.<br>They'll be assisted.       |
| 5. | You could be accused.<br>No one could accuse you.       | Some one could accuse you.<br>You couldn't be accused. |
| 6. | We weren't complimented.<br>Some one complimented us.   | No one complimented us.<br>We were complimented        |

- |     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
| 7.  | That had to be admitted.<br>No one had to admit that.    | Someone had to admit that.<br>That didn't have to be admitted. |
| 8.  | He isn't encouraged him.<br>Some one encourages him.     | No one encourages him.<br>He's encouraged.                     |
| 9.  | They were broken.<br>No one broke them.                  | Some one broke them.<br>They weren't broken.                   |
| 10. | That didn't use to be done.<br>Some one used to do that. | No one used to do that.<br>That used to be done.               |
| 11. | We're being blamed.<br>No one is blaming us.             | Someone is blaming us.<br>We aren't being blamed.              |
| 12. | You won't be embarrassed.<br>Someone will embarrass you. | No one will embarrass you.<br>You'll be embarrassed.           |
| 13. | They aren't advised.<br>Some one advises them.           | No one advises them.<br>They're advised.                       |
| 14. | It's been unwrapped.<br>No one has unwrapped it.         | Someone has unwrapped it.<br>It hasn't been unwrapped.         |
| 15. | That mustn't be assumed.<br>Some one must assume that.   | No one must assume that.<br>That must be assumed.              |

## 111. ACTIVE VS. PASSIVE VERBS (3) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. Did John tell you the news?  
 S2. Yes. I hear that they - (A)  
 S1. why - (B) ?  
 S2. I really can't answer that.

(A)  
 are removing it  
 fastened them  
 had to translate it  
 have opposed it  
 must return them  
 were considering it  
 will modify them  
 distributed it

(B)  
 is it being removed  
 were they fastened  
 did it have to be translated  
 has it been opposed  
 must they be returned  
 was it being considered  
 will they be modified  
 was it distributed

### Conversation Drill B

- S1. Can you tell me who (A) ?  
 S2. I know I didn't (B)  
 S1. I think (C) last night.  
 S2. I still can't tell you who did it.

(A)  
 broke that glass  
 brought these boxes  
 took that book  
 lost those tickets  
 drove my car  
 sent those letters  
 drank all the milk  
 did the work

(B)  
 break it  
 bring them  
 take it  
 lose them  
 drive it  
 send them  
 drink it  
 do it

(C)  
 it was broken  
 they were brought  
 it was taken  
 they were lost  
 it was driven  
 they were sent  
 it was drunk  
 it was done

## 112. NOUN CLAUSE VS. QUESTION (1) /CONVERSATIONS

---

### *Conversation A*

- S1. Where's the public library?  
 S2. I beg your pardon.  
 S1. Can you tell me where the library is?  
 S2. Two blocks from here, on the right.

### *Conversation B*

- S1. How do you say that in English?  
 S2. I don't remember how you say that in English.  
 S1. Who can help us with this?  
 S2. Let's ask Pierre who can help us with it.

### *Conversation C*

- S1. Why were you absent?  
 S2. I can't tell you why I was absent.  
 S1. Where did you go?  
 S2. I can't tell you where I went either.

### *Conversation D*

- S1. Whom did Alice write to yesterday?  
 S2. She hasn't told me whom she wrote to.  
 S1. What did she write about?  
 S2. She hasn't told me what she wrote about either.

### *Conversation E*

- S1. What are they doing?  
 S2. I can't imagine what they're doing.  
 S1. When will they finish?  
 S2. I have no idea when they'll finish.

### *Exercise 1*

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. I can tell you where they study.            | Where do they study?          |
| 2. I can tell you when they can study.         | When can they study?          |
| 3. I can tell you what they had to study.      | What did they have to study?  |
| 4. I can tell you what they've studied.        | What have they studied?       |
| 5. I can tell you how much they studied.       | How much did they study?      |
| 6. I can tell you where they're studying.      | Where are they studying?      |
| 7. I can tell you why they won't study.        | Why won't they study?         |
| 8. I can tell you when they're going to study. | When are they going to study? |
| 9. I can tell you what part they didn't study. | What part didn't they study?  |
| 10. I can tell you where they usually study.   | Where do they usually study?  |
| 11. I can tell you which one they studied.     | Which one did they study?     |
| 12. I can tell you when they must study.       | When must they study?         |

- |     |   |                                  |
|-----|---|----------------------------------|
| 13. | I can tell you what they used to study.       | What did they use to study?      |
| 14. | I can tell you how long they should study.    | How long should they study?      |
| 15. | I can tell you where they've been studying.   | Where have they been studying?   |
| 16. | I can tell you what they're going to study.   | What are they going to study?    |
| 17. | I can tell you why they can't study.          | Why can't they study?            |
| 18. | I can tell you which one they're studying.    | Which one are they studying?     |
| 19. | I can tell you when they usually study.       | When do they usually study?      |
| 20. | I can tell you which one they'd better study. | Which one had they better study? |

### Exercise 2

- |     |   |                                      |
|-----|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1.  | Haven't you heard what she'll write?              | No. What will she write?             |
| 2.  | Haven't you heard why she couldn't write?         | No. Why could she write?             |
| 3.  | Haven't you heard how often she writes?           | No. How often does she write?        |
| 4.  | Haven't you heard where she's writing?            | No. Where's she writing?             |
| 5.  | Haven't you heard what she's written              | No. What's she written?              |
| 6.  | Haven't you heard how much she wrote?             | No. How much did she write?          |
| 7.  | Haven't you heard what she has to write?          | No. What does she have to write?     |
| 8.  | Haven't you heard when she should write?          | No. When should she write?           |
| 9.  | Haven't you heard whom she use to write to?       | No. Whom did she use to write?       |
| 10. | Haven't you heard what she's going to write?      | No. What she going to write?         |
| 11. | Haven't you heard how much she must write?        | No. How much she write?              |
| 12. | Haven't you heard how long she was writing?       | No. How long was she writing?        |
| 13. | Haven't you heard when she usually writes?        | No. When does she usually write?     |
| 14. | Haven't you heard which one she'd better write?   | No. Which one had she better write?  |
| 15. | Haven't you heard where she's been writing?       | No. Where she been writing?          |
| 16. | Haven't you heard what she's written?             | No. What's she written?              |
| 17. | Haven't you heard which one she's going to write? | No. Which one is she going to write? |
| 18. | Haven't you heard what she plans to write?        | No. What does she plan to write?     |
| 19. | Haven't you heard how much she wrote?             | No. How much did she write?          |

## 113. NOUN CLASSES Vs. QUESTION (2) / CONVERSATION

---

### Conversation A

- S1. When did Peter return?  
 S2. I beg your pardon.  
 S1. Please tell me when Peter returned.  
 S2. I can't tell you.

### Conversation B

- S1. When will the party be held?  
 S2. Tom can tell you when the party will be held.  
 S1. Whom did they invite to the party?  
 S2. You'll have to ask Tom whom they invited.

### Conversation C

- S1. Where did the people go?  
 S2. I don't have any idea where they went.  
 S1. Do you know where John went?  
 S2. I didn't even know he had gone.

### Conversation D

- S1. What did Fred say to Mary?  
 S2. She didn't tell me what Fred had said to her.  
 S1. Where will she be this afternoon?  
 S2. She didn't tell me where she would be.

### Conversation E

- S1. Whose car is Paul using?  
 S2. He didn't tell me whose car he was using.  
 S1. Why does he need a car so urgently?  
 S2. Why he needs a car really doesn't interest me.

### Exercise 1

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Where do they study?          | I really wonder where they study.          |
| 2. When can they study?          | I really wonder when they can study.       |
| 3. What did they have to study?  | I really wonder what they had to study.    |
| 4. What have they studied?       | I really wonder what they've studied.      |
| 5. How much did they study?      | I really wonder how much they studied.     |
| 6. Where are they studying?      | I really wonder where they're studying.    |
| 7. Why won't they study?         | I really wonder why they won't study.      |
| 8. When do they generally study? | I really wonder when they generally study. |
| 9. What do they usually study?   | I really wonder what they usually study.   |

10. When will they study?
11. When must they study?
12. What did they use to study?
13. How long should they study?
14. Where have they been studying?
15. What are they going to study?
16. Why can't they study?
17. Which one are they studying?
18. When do they usually study?
19. Which one had they better study?

I really wonder when they study.  
 I really wonder when they must study.  
 I really wonder what they used to study.  
 I really wonder how long they should study.  
 I really wonder where they've been studying.  
 I really wonder what they're going to study.  
 I really wonder why they can't study.  
 I really wonder which one they're studying.  
 I really wonder when they usually study.  
 I really wonder which one they'd better study.

### Exercise 2

1. What will she write?
2. Why couldn't she write?
3. How often does she write?
4. Where's she writing?
5. What's she written?
6. How much did she write?
7. What does she have to Write?
8. How much has she Written?
9. Where's she going to Write?
10. Whom did she write to?
11. When should she write?
12. Whom did she use to write to?
13. What's she going to write?
14. How much must she write?
15. How long was she writing?
16. When does she usually write?
17. Which one had she better write?
18. Where's she been writing?
19. What's she written?

Haven't you heard what she'll write ?  
 Haven't you heard why she couldn't write?  
 Haven't you heard how often she writes?  
 Haven't you heard where she's writing?  
 Haven't you heard what she's written?  
 Haven't you heard how much she wrote?  
 Haven't you heard what she has to write?  
 Haven't you heard how much she's written?  
 Haven't you heard where she's going to write?  
 Haven't you heard whom she wrote to?  
 Haven't you heard when she should write?  
 Haven't you heard whom she used to write to?  
 Haven't you heard what she's going to write?  
 Haven't you heard how much she must write?  
 Haven't you heard how long she was writing?  
 Haven't you heard when she usually writes?  
 Haven't you heard which one she'd better write?  
 Haven't you heard where she's been writing?  
 Haven't you heard what she's written?

### Exercise 3

1. Why did they wear it? Let's ask them.
2. Why did she choose it? Please tell me.
3. Why did John make it? Can we find out?
4. Why did you write it? We all wonder.
5. Why did they bring it? Ask your friend.
6. Why did the man steal it? I can't imagine.
7. Why did Tom hold it? No one can explain.
8. Why did Alice say it? He doesn't know.
9. Why did they buy it? Will you ask them?
10. Why did she sell it? Has she told you?
11. Why did the boy read it? Let's find out.
12. Why did they send it? John must realize.
13. Why did the boys break it? Do you have any idea?

Let's ask them why they wore it.  
 Please tell me why she chose it.  
 Can we find out why John made it?  
 We all wonder why you wrote it.  
 Ask your friend why they brought it.  
 I can't imagine why the man stole it.  
 No one can explain why Tom held it.  
 He doesn't know why Alice said it.  
 Will you ask them why they bought it?  
 Has she told you why she sold it?  
 Let's find out why the boy read it.  
 John must realize why they sent it.  
 Do you have any idea why the boys broke it?

### Exercise 4

1. Where's she going to stay? Don't you know?
2. When do they plan to go? Please tell all of us.
3. Why hasn't he spoken to us? Let's ask him.

Don't you know where she's going to stay?  
 Please tell all of us when they plan to go.  
 Let's ask him why he hasn't spoken to us.

4. Where did they take it? Every one wonders.  
 5. How can she possibly do it? No one can imagine.  
 6. Which one will they use? I Can we find out?  
 7. Why don't they want to go? Did you ask them?  
 8. Where docs she study? Mary can tell you.  
 9. What did he pay for that? Do you remember?  
 10. There have they all gone? Won't Tom know?  
 11. Why is that so difficult? We all wonder.  
 12. How did he do that part? Can't he explain?  
 13. How much did the men have? No one remembers.

Everyone wonders where they took it.  
 No one can imagine how she can possibly do it.  
 Can we find out which one they'll use?  
 Did you ask them why they don't want to go?  
 Mary can tell you where she studies.  
 Do you remember what he paid for that?  
 Won't Tom know where they've all gone?  
 We all wander why that's So difficult.  
 Can't he explain haw he did that part?  
 No one remembers haw much the men had.

## 114. INFINITIVE OF REASONS FOR PURPOSE /CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

S1. My friend enrolled at a local school.  
 S2. Did he say why he enrolled there?  
 S1. He enrolled there to improve his English, he said.  
 S2. I suspect he did it to satisfy his boss.

### Conversation B

- S1. I've come to see Alice.  
 S2. Sorry. She left for the library about ten minutes ago.  
 S1. I wonder why she went there.  
 S2. I think she went there to meet someone.

### Conversation C

- S1. Could I borrow some money from you?  
 S2. What do you need it for?  
 S1. I need it to pay my telephone bill.  
 S2. All right, but I'll have to stop at the bank to get it.

### Conversation D

- S1. John has changed his plans in order to go with us.  
 S2. I'm glad that he was able to change them.  
 S1. In order to change them, he had to speak to Mr. White.  
 S2. It was nice of Mr. White to give John permission.

### Conversation E

- S1. I'm here to get some details about this classified ad.  
 S2. I'm sorry, but you'll have to write to the advertiser.  
 S1. Why must I write to the advertiser?  
 S2. In order to get the information you want.

### Exercise 1

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I enrolled in a course. I wanted to improve my English.    | I enrolled in a course to improve my English. |
| 2. He shut the window. He wanted to keep out the noise.       | He shut the window to keep out the noise.     |
| 3. They questioned us. They wanted to find out the answer.    | They questioned us to find out the answer.    |
| 4. She went to the store. She wanted to buy groceries.        | She went to the store to buy groceries.       |
| 5. The boys ran fast. The boys wanted to get there on time.   | The boys ran fast to get there on time.       |
| 6. I had to do that. I wanted to satisfy my boss.             | I had to do that to satisfy my boss.          |
| 7. We went back later. We wanted to see it again.             | We went back later to see it again.           |
| 8. Mary informed Mr. Brown. Mary wanted to hear his reaction. | Mary informed Mr. Brown to hear his reaction. |
| 9. You called your friend. You wanted to get help.            | You called your friend to get help.           |
| 10. His wife gave him a list. His wife wanted to remind him.  | His wife gave him a list to remind him.       |
| 11. He went to bed early. He wanted to get additional rest.   | He went to bed early to get additional rest.  |
| 12. I borrowed some money. I wanted to pay for the tickets.   | I borrowed some money to pay for the tickets. |
| 13. They stayed at home. They wanted to finish the report.    | They stayed at home to finish the report.     |
| 14. She turned on the radio. She wanted to hear               |   |

that program.

15. I'm going to open that window. I want to get some fresh air.

16. They've taken an examination. They want to qualify for it.

She turned on the radio to hear that program.

I'm going to open that window to get some fresh air.

They've taken an examination to qualify for it.

## Exercise 2

1. He wants to go with them. He's changed his plans.
2. They want to open the box. They're using a knife.
3. You want to attend it. You must make a reservation.
4. He wanted to get a raise. He had to study accounting.
5. They wanted to get there on time. They drove very fast.
6. Mary wants to please them. Mary will do anything.
7. I wanted to hear the man. I turned down the radio.
8. He wants to save money. He does his own cooking.
9. He wanted to surprise them. We kept everything a secret.
10. John wants to go to college. John must save his money.
11. We wanted to see the parade. We went downtown early.
12. I wanted to get more information. I went to the library.
13. She wants to go to Europe. She plans to quit her job.
14. I want to finish all the work. I must start quite early.
15. He wanted to improve his English. He practiced daily.
16. I wanted to get his address. I had to write to his mother.

He's changed his plans in order to go with them.

They're using a knife in order to open the box.

You must make a reservation in order to attend it.

He had to study accounting in order to get a raise.

They drove very fast in order to get there on time.

Mary will do anything in order to please them.

I turned down the radio in order to hear the man.

He does his own cooking in order to save money.

We kept everything a secret in order to surprise them.

John must save his money in order to go to college.

We went downtown early in order to see the parade.

I went to the library in order to get more information.

She plans to quit her job in order to go to Europe.

I must start quite early in order to finish all the work.

He practiced daily in order to improve his English.

I had to write to his mother in order to get his address.

## 115. INFINITIVE OF GERUND (1)/ CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversations A

S1. Do you enjoy writing letters?

S2. No. I put off writing letters whenever possible.

S1. Do you also postpone writing reports?

S2. Unfortunately, I do.

### Conversation B

S1. Why did they refuse to give you the information?

S2. They probably don't wish to reveal their plans yet.

S1. Did they seem to want to help us?

S2. Yes. In fact, they even offered to.

### Conversation C

S1. Have you finished writing the report?

- S2. I expect to complete it in an hour or so.  
 S1. Don't stop working because of me.  
 S2. I won't. I've resolved to finish it today.

#### Conversation D

- S1. Have you practiced using the new words in sentences?  
 S2. No. I'm afraid I've failed to do that.  
 S1. I strongly advise practicing that way.  
 S2. The teacher suggested doing it that way too.

#### Conversation E

- S1. What has Paul finally decided to become?  
 S2. I think he's considering becoming a lawyer.  
 S1. Where does he intend to go to school?  
 S2. So far, he's avoided making that decision.

#### Exercise 1

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. We hoped to see that.        | What did you hope to see?       |
| 2. We considered seeing that.   | What did you consider seeing?   |
| 3. We offered to see that.      | What did you offer to see? "    |
| 4. We discussed seeing that.    | What did you discuss seeing?    |
| 5. We wished to see that.       | What did you wish to see?       |
| 6. We "appreciated seeing that. | What did you appreciate seeing? |
| 7. We planned to see that.      | What did you plan to see?       |
| 8. We failed to see that.       | What did you fail to see?       |
| 9. We favored seeing that.      | What did you favor seeing?      |
| 10. We postponed seeing that.   | What did you postpone seeing?   |
| 11. We resolved to see that.    | What did you resolve to see?    |
| 12. We stopped seeing that.     | What did you stop seeing?       |
| 13. We demanded to see that.    | What did you demand to see?     |
| 14. We kept on seeing that.     | What did you keep on seeing?    |
| 15. We forgot to see that.      | What did you forget to see?     |
| 16. We pretended to see that.   | What did you pretend to see?    |

#### Exercise 2

- |                |                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. postpone    | What did you postpone seeing?   |
| 2. demand      | What did you demand to see?     |
| 3. plan        | What did you plan to see?       |
| 4. fail        | What did you fail to see?       |
| 5. favor       | What did you favor seeing?      |
| 6. consider    | What did you consider seeing?   |
| 7. resolve     | What did you resolve to see?    |
| 8. offer       | What did you offer to see?      |
| 9. pretend     | What did you pretend to see?    |
| 10. hope       | What did you hope to see?       |
| 11. discuss    | What did you discuss seeing?    |
| 12. appreciate | What did you appreciate seeing? |
| 13. stop       | What did you stop seeing?       |
| 14. wish       | What did you wish to see?       |
| 15. forget     | What did you forget to see?     |
| 16. keep on    | What did you keep on seeing?    |



## 116. INFINITIVE VS. GERUND (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. When do you plan to leave for Hong Kong?  
 S2. We hope to leave on the tenth.  
 S1. Why did you put off leaving until the tenth?  
 S2. Well, we need to buy a lot of things before leaving.

### Conversation B

- S1. When do you expect to hear from your friends?  
 S2. I really hesitate even to guess.  
 S1. I advise not worrying about it.  
 S2. I've already made up my mind not to worry.

### Conversation C

- S1. Do you resent having to follow orders?  
 S2. Truthfully, I can't stand taking orders from people.  
 S1. But you shouldn't risk losing your job because of that.  
 S2. I try not to take chances.

### Conversation D

- S1. I can't help worrying about what they'll do.  
 S2. Personally, I don't think they'll dare do anything.  
 S1. I recall having heard other people say that.  
 S2. We can always force them to stop complaining.

### Conversation E

- S1. Did you warn your friend not to say anything?  
 S2. I told him it was important that he reveal nothing.  
 S1. I recommend that he even avoid answering any questions.  
 S2. I'll remind him to keep this a strict secret.

### Exercise 1

1. She decided to do that.
2. She avoided doing that.
3. She needed to do that.
4. She resisted doing that.
5. She delayed doing that.
6. She wanted to do that.
7. She practiced doing that.
8. She disliked doing that.

- What did she decide to do?  
 What did she avoid doing?  
 What did she need to do?  
 What did she resist doing?  
 What did she delay doing?  
 What did she want to do?  
 What did she practice doing?  
 What did she dislike doing?

9. She expected to do that.
10. She finished doing that.
11. She promised to do that.
12. She suggested doing that.
13. She intended to do that.
14. She advised doing that.
15. She refused to do that.
16. She enjoyed doing that.
17. She put off doing that.
18. She offered to do that.

- What did she expect to do?  
 What did she finish doing?  
 What did she promise to do?  
 What did she suggest doing?  
 What did she intend to do?  
 What did she advise doing?  
 What did she refuse to do?  
 What did she enjoy doing?  
 What did she put off doing?  
 What did she offer to do?

### Exercise 2

1. What did he want?
2. What did he avoid?
3. What did he refuse?
4. What did he finish?
5. What did he decide?
6. What did he promise?
7. What did he resist?
8. What did he need?
9. What did he advise?
10. What did he practice?
11. What did he suggest?
12. What did he expect?
13. What did he delay?
14. What did he enjoy?
15. What did he intend?
16. What did he dislike?
17. What did he offer?
18. What did he put off?

- He wanted to do that.  
 He avoided doing that.  
 He refused to do that.  
 He finished doing that.  
 He decided to do that.  
 He promised to do that.  
 He resisted doing that.  
 He needed to do that.  
 He advised doing that.  
 He practiced doing that.  
 He suggested doing that.  
 He expected to do that.  
 He delayed doing that.  
 He enjoyed doing that.  
 He intended to do that.  
 He disliked doing that.  
 He offered to do that.  
 He put off doing that.

### Exercise 3

1. It's essential to continue.
2. It'll be important to start.
3. It hasn't been pleasant to work.
4. It was necessary to succeed.
5. It shouldn't be foolish to try.
6. It can be dangerous to proceed.
7. It won't be absurd to go back.
8. It was only sensible to apologize.
9. It isn't very fair to complain.
10. It'll be rather helpful to watch.
11. It's been very convenient to observe.
12. It would be dishonest to compete.
13. It must have been hard to choose.
14. It won't be practical to go ahead.
15. It would have been selfish to stop.
16. It used to be impossible to rest.
17. It's been delightful to travel.
18. It must be wonderful to relax.
19. It shouldn't have been hard to win.
20. It'll be quite unpleasant to wait.

- Continuing is essential.  
 Starting will be important.  
 Working hasn't been pleasant.  
 Succeeding was necessary.  
 Trying shouldn't be foolish.  
 Proceeding can be dangerous.  
 Going back won't be absurd.  
 Apologizing was only sensible.  
 Complaining isn't very fair.  
 Watching will be rather helpful.  
 Observing has been very convenient.  
 Competing would be dishonest.  
 Choosing must have been hard.  
 Going ahead won't be practical.  
 Stopping would have been selfish.  
 Resting used to be impossible.  
 Traveling has been delightful.  
 Relaxing must be wonderful.  
 Winning shouldn't have been hard.  
 Waiting will be quite unpleasant.

### Exercise 4

1. It'll be interesting to observe that.
2. It's boring to memorize things.
3. It's been pleasing to have them.
4. It was thrilling to recall that.
5. It can be annoying to hear that.
6. It was satisfying to try it once.
7. It's really astonishing to realize it.
8. It'll be amusing to watch them.
9. It must be amazing to compare them.
10. It could be disturbing to see that.
11. It's irritating to put up with that.
12. It'll be reassuring to examine them.
13. It was shocking to comprehend that.
14. It should be inspiring to attend one.
15. It's been disappointing to find it out.
16. It's startling to see one suddenly.

Observing that will be interesting.  
 Memorizing things is boring.  
 Having them has been pleasing.  
 Recalling that was thrilling.  
 Hearing that can be annoying.  
 Trying it once was satisfying.  
 Realizing it is really astonishing.  
 Watching them will be amusing.  
 Comparing them must be amazing.  
 Seeing that could be disturbing.  
 Putting up with that is irritating.  
 Examining them will be reassuring.  
 Comprehending that was shocking.  
 Attending one should be inspiring.  
 Finding it out has been disappointing.  
 Seeing one suddenly is startling.

## **117. INFINITIVE Vs. GERUND (3) / CONVERSATION DRILLS**

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. I'll be in Europe by next week.  
 S2. There are lots of things (A)  
 S1. I (B) as much as possible.  
 S2. Have a good time!

(A)  
 to see there  
 to do on the continent  
 to enjoy in that area  
 to take pictures of  
 to get interested in

(B)  
 hope to see  
 plan to do  
 want to enjoy  
 expect to use my camera  
 intend to travel around

#### Conversation Drill B

S1. Are you looking for me?  
 S2. Yes. Have you finished (A) yet?  
 S1. Just (B)  
 S2. Please try to finish everything by tonight.

(A)  
 filling out your application  
 writing your daily report  
 looking over the figures  
 checking the two lists

(B)  
 the first two pages  
 the essential details  
 the important statistics  
 the first one

#### Conversation Drill C

81. Why are you so unhappy about your assistant?  
 82. Well, she always (A)  
 81. Does she (B) ?  
 82. I'm afraid she does

(A)  
 avoids doing her share  
 advises changing everything  
 postpones finishing her work  
 resists taking orders  
 puts off typing reports

(B)  
 want to find another job  
 ever threaten to quit  
 expect to be promoted  
 ever refuse to take orders  
 fail to do her share

## 118. CONJUNCTIVE + INFINITIVE / CONVERSATIONS

---

#### Conversation A

S1. Where should I park my car?  
 S2. Didn't Fred show you where to' park it?  
 S1. He wasn't sure what to' tell me.  
 S2. Then let's ask the guard avar there where to' put it.

#### Conversation B

- S1. Would you explain how to pronounce this word?  
 S2. I thought you already knew how to pronounce it.  
 S1. I did know, but I've forgotten.  
 S2. Well, I hope you remember how to pronounce it next time.

### Conversation C

- S1. Whom should we see to get permission to leave?  
 S2. I think I know whom to speak to.  
 S1. I wonder how we can explain our difficult situation.  
 S2. I've been wondering how to do it too.

### Conversation D

- S1. When are you going to ride to the party with?  
 S2. Mary, because she knows where to go.  
 S1. I didn't realize Mary knew how to drive a car.  
 S2. I think she learned how to drive just recently.

### Conversation E

- S1. Which one of these sweaters are you going to buy?  
 S2. I really don't know which one to choose.  
 S1. In that case, do you want me to tell you what to do?  
 S2. Since I can't decide which to take, I'd appreciate your advice.

### Exercise 1

We discovered how to do it.  
 When  
 Wondered  
 Where  
 Decided  
 What  
 Knew  
 When  
 Learned  
 What  
 Explained  
 How  
 Remembered  
 When  
 Forgot What

We discovered when to do it.  
 We wondered when to do it.  
 We wondered where to do it.  
 We decided where to do it.  
 We decided what to do.  
 We knew what to do.  
 We knew when to do it.  
 We learned when to do it.  
 We Earned what to do.  
 We explained what to do.  
 We explained how to do it.  
 We remembered how to do it.  
 We remembered when to do it.  
 We forgot when to do it.  
 We forgot what to do.

### Exercise 2

Where will he go?  
 Which ones will they bring?  
 How much will you pay?  
 When will she leave there?  
 Whom will the man see?  
 What will John give them?  
 How will they find the man?  
 Which will you use last?  
 How far will she drive?

He knows where to go.  
 They know which ones to bring.  
 I know how much to pay.  
 She knows when to leave there.  
 He knows whom to see.  
 He knows what to give them.  
 They know how to find the man.  
 I know which to use last.  
 She knows how far to drive.

What kind will he choose?  
 Which one will they talk about?  
 Where will she get the money?  
 What will they refer to?

He knows what kind to choose.  
 They know which one to talk about.  
 She knows where to get the money.  
 They know what to refer to.

## **119. INJUNCTIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES (1) / CONVERSATIONS**

### **Conversation A**

- S1. Is it possible to convince your friend he's wrong?  
 S2. Well, he's likely to be very stubborn.  
 S1. I'm willing to try it if it's sensible to do so.  
 S2. It would be foolish of him not at least to listen.

### **Conversation B**

- S1. It's hard to get fast service in this store.  
 S2. I'm always reluctant to shop here because of that.  
 S1. I guess it's silly to get angry over such a small thing.  
 S2. And I'm sure it would be useless to complain to the manager.

### **Conversation C**

- S1. It's absurd to suspect Robert of having lied to us.

- S2. Yes. He's much too honest to do anything like that.  
 S1. However, it's essential to find out what happened.  
 S2. I'm too upset about all this to know what to do.

#### Conversation D

- S1. I'm glad to hear that you've found a good job.  
 S2. I think I was lucky to find one so quickly.  
 S1. Now I suppose you're eager to get started.  
 S2. Yes. It'll be wonderful to work in such nice quarters.

#### Conversation E

- S1. Isn't it rather expensive to live in that part of the city?  
 S2. Perhaps, but it was impossible for us to find anything elsewhere.  
 S1. Of course, it must be convenient to live so close to your office.  
 S2. Yes. It's practical to live there even if it's expensive.

#### Exercise 1

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. They heard that. They were happy.       | They were happy to hear that.      |
| 2. He didn't do it. He was unfit.          | He was unfit to do it.             |
| 3. We saw it. We were lucky.               | We were lucky to see it.           |
| 4. I announced it. I was proud.            | I was proud to announce it.        |
| 5. They got it. They were fortunate        | They were fortunate to get it      |
| 6. She didn't say that. She was reluctant. | She was reluctant to say that      |
| 7. You helped her. You were considerate    | You were considerate to help her.  |
| 8. We won it. We were grateful.            |                                    |
| 9. I didn't stop them. I was powerless     | We were grateful to win it.        |
| 10. They explored it. They were curious    | I was powerless to stop them       |
| 11. You welcomed him. You were discreet    |                                    |
| 12. He didn't attempt it. He was afraid    | They were curious to explore it.   |
| 13. She forgave them. She was glad         | You were discreet to welcome him.  |
| 14. We explained it. We were ready         | He was afraid to attempt it        |
| 15. He didn't begin it. He was unable      | She was glad to forgive them       |
| 16. They assisted me. They were good       | We were ready to explain it        |
|  | He was unable to begin it. unable. |
|  | They were good to assist good.     |

#### Exercise 2

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. She'll hear it. She'll be disturbed.    | She'll be disturbed to hear it.      |
| 2. We know that. We're pleased.            | We're pleased to know that.          |
| 3. He has them. He's been thrilled.        | He's been thrilled to have them.     |
| 4. She assisted me. She was contented.     | She was contented to assist me.      |
| 5. They'll get it. They'll be irritated.   | They'll be irritated to get it.      |
| 6. I explain that. I'm always rewarded.    | I'm always rewarded to explain that. |
| 7. She found it out. She was annoyed.      | She was annoyed to find it out.      |
| 8. They'll start it. They'll be reassured. | They'll be reassured to start it.    |
| 9. He got it across. He was satisfied.     | He was satisfied to get it across.   |
| 10. She's seen it. She's been impressed.   | She's been impressed to see it.      |
| 11. We lost them. We were dismayed.        | We were dismayed to lose them.       |
| 12. I'll study that. I'm very stimulated.  | I'm very stimulated to study that.   |
| 13. He'll propose that. He'll be prepared. | He'll be prepared to propose that.   |
| 14. She began it. She was very excited.    | She was very excited to begin it.    |
| 15. We collect them. We've been amused.    | We've been amused to collect them.   |
| 16. They'll use it. They'll be frightened. |                                      |

They'll be frightened to use it.

## 120. INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVALS (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. Why didn't Peter finish the whole job?  
S2. I don't know. He seemed eager to do it.  
S1. Maybe he was afraid to show his work to anyone.  
S2. Well, I know he was anxious to get started this morning.

### Conversation B

- S1. How do you like your new job as a receptionist?  
S2. Well, it's interesting to meet so many people.  
S1. But isn't it boring to say the same things all day long?  
S2. Sometimes it gets a little monotonous.

### Conversation C

- S1. I was thrilled to hear the news.  
S2. Your parents will be pleased to hear it too.  
S1. Wasn't it exciting to hear that you had won the prize?  
S2. Yes, but it was hard to believe.

### Conversation D

- S1. It was kind of Mary and Alice to help us.  
S2. I'm sure they were glad to do it.  
S1. We were lucky to have such good assistants, weren't we?  
S2. Yes, and it was pleasant to work with them, I thought.

### Conversation E

S1. Is Tom willing to go with the visitors tomorrow?

S2. Yes. He said he'd be delighted to do it.

S1. It's nice of him to help us this way.

S2. Yes, it is. We're fortunate to have such a good friend.

### Exercise 1

1. She'll be disturbed to hear it.
2. We're pleased to know that.
3. He's been thrilled to have them.
4. I was contented to assist her.
5. They'll be irritated to get it.
6. She's rewarded to explain that.
7. I was annoyed to find it out.
8. They'll be delighted to start it.
9. He was satisfied to get them back.
10. I was impressed to read it.

- It'll disturb her to hear it.  
 It pleases us to know that.  
 It's thrilled him to have them.  
 It contented me to assist her.  
 It'll irritate them to get it.  
 It rewards her to explain that.  
 It annoyed me to find it out.  
 I'll delight them to start it.  
 It satisfied him to get them back.  
 It impressed me to read it.

### Exercise 2

1. It annoyed me to find it out.
2. It'll delight them to start it.
3. It satisfied him to get them back.
4. It's impressed me to read it.
5. It dismayed us to lose them.
6. It'll inspire him to study hard.
7. It'll interest me to hear about it.
8. It excited her to receive them.
9. It's amused me to collect them.
10. It'll frighten them to use it.

- Finding it out annoyed me.  
 Starting it will delight them.  
 Getting them back satisfied him.  
 Reading it has impressed me.  
 Losing them dismayed us.  
 Studying hard will inspire him.  
 Hearing about it will interest me.  
 Receiving them excited her.  
 Collecting them has amused me.  
 Using it will frighten them.

### Exercise 3

1. He thanked them. He was polite.
2. He didn't thank them. He was rude.
3. He spent his money. He was foolish.
4. He didn't spend his money. He was wise.
5. He locked the door. He was cautious.
6. He didn't lock the door. He was careless.
7. He shared the food. He was generous.
8. He didn't share the food. He was selfish.
9. He helped us. He was good.
10. He didn't tell them. He was dishonest.
11. He answered truthfully. He was sensible.
12. He offered us a ride. He was considerate.
13. He didn't say anything. He was discrete .
14. He did it that way. He was clever.
15. He didn't complain at all. He was kind.
16. He invited us to go. He was thoughtful.

- It was polite of him to thank them.  
 It was rude of him not to thank them.  
 It was foolish of him to spend his money.  
 It was wise of him not to spend his money.  
 It was cautious of him to lock the door.  
 It was careless of him not to lock the door.  
 It was generous of him to share the food.  
 It was selfish of him not to share the food.  
 It was good of him to help us.  
 It was dishonest of him not to tell them.  
 It was sensible of him to answer truthfully.  
 It was considerate of him to offer us a ride.  
 It was discreet of him not to say anything.  
 It was clever of him to do it that way.  
 It was kind of him not to complain at all.  
 It was thoughtful of him to invite us to go.

## 121.INFINITIVE AFTER TOO OR ENOUGH / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. This food is too hot to eat.  
S2. Be careful. It's hot enough to burn your tongue.  
S1. It will be cool enough to eat if we wait a few minutes.  
S2. Yes, but let's not wait until it's too cool to enjoy.

### Conversation B

- S1. The man's explanation was too complicated to understand.  
S2. He doesn't speak slowly enough for us to take notes either.  
S1. He gets too excited to remember us students, I think.  
S2. Are you brave enough to ask him to repeat everything?

### Conversation C

- S1. The wind is really strong today.  
S2. I'm afraid it's too strong for us to consider going sailing.  
S1. Definitely. It's blowing hard enough to tip a boat over.  
S2. Maybe it will get calm enough later for us to go out.

### Conversation D

- S1. I couldn't finish all the work this afternoon.  
S2. It was really too much to finish in one day.  
S1. To tell the truth, there was enough work to keep me busy two days.  
S2. But you're experienced enough to do it faster than anyone else.

### Conversation E

- S1. Why doesn't the company try this new method of production?  
S2. The new method is too dangerous to be considered.  
S1. Then will the company continue to use the old method?  
S2. Yes. The old method is still safe enough to be used.

## Exercise 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. The food was very hot. I couldn't eat it.                 | The food was too hot for me to eat.                 |
| 2. The food was very hot. It burned my tongue.               | The food was hot enough to burn my tongue.          |
| 3. The suit is dirty. You can't wear it tomorrow             | The suit is too dirty for you to wear tomorrow      |
| 4. The suit is clean, You can wear it tomorrow.              | The suit is clean enough for you to wear tomorrow.  |
| 5. The water is very cold now. You can't go swimming.        | The water is too cold now for you to go swimming.   |
| 6. The water is quite warm now. You can go swimming.         | The water is warm enough now for you to go swimming |
| 7. The rope was very long. It reached to the bottom.         | The rope was long enough to reach to the bottom.    |
| 8. The rope wasn't very long. It didn't reach to the bottom. | The rope wasn't long enough to reach to the bottom. |
| 9. The rope was very short. It didn't reach to the bottom.   | The rope was too short to reach to the bottom.      |
| 10. I'm quite strong. I can lift that box without help.      | I'm strong enough to lift that box without help.    |
| 11. I'm quite weak. I can't lift that box without help.      | I'm too weak to lift that box without help.         |
| 12. He's very bright. He can solve the problem by himself.   | He's bright enough to solve the problem by himself. |
| 13. He's upset now. He can't talk about the problem.         | He's too upset now to talk about the problem.       |
| 14. The work was very hard. We weren't able to finish it.    | The work was too hard for us to finish.             |
| 15. That method is dangerous. It can't be considered.        | That method is too dangerous to be considered.      |
| 16. The other method is quite safe. It can be used.          | The other method is safe enough to be used.         |

## Conversation A

- S1. This food is too hot to eat.  
 S2. Be careful. It's hot enough to burn your tongue.  
 S1. It will be cool enough to eat if we wait a few minutes  
 S2. Yes, but let's not wait until it's too cool to enjoy.

## Conversation B

- S1. The man's explanation was too complicated to understand.  
 S2. He doesn't speak slowly enough for us to take notes either.  
 S1. He gets too excited to remember us students, I this  
 S2. Are you brave enough to ask him to repeat everything?

## Conversation C

- S1. The wind is really strong today.  
 S2. I'm afraid it's too strong for us to consider going sailing.  
 S1. Definitely. It's blowing hard enough to tip a boat over.  
 S2. May be it will get clam enough later for us to go out.

## Conversation D

- S1. I couldn't finish all the work this afternoon.  
 S2. It was really too much to finish in one day.  
 S1. To tell the truth, there was enough work to keep me busy two days.  
 S2. But you're experienced enough to do it faster than anyone else.

## Conversation E

- S1. Why doesn't the company try this new method of production?

- S2. The new method is too dangerous to be considered.  
 S1. Then will the company continue to use the old method?  
 S2. Yes. The old method is still safe enough to be used.

*Exercise 1*

1. He didn't finish it. He was very nervous. He was too nervous to finish it.
2. I didn't hear that. I was very confused. I was too confused to hear that.
3. We didn't say anything we were very angry. We were too angry to say anything
4. They didn't do it. They were very discouraged. They were too discouraged to do it.
5. She didn't read that. She was very busy then. She was too busy then to read that
6. I didn't meet them there. I was very lazy. I was too lazy to meet them there.
7. They didn't help us. They were very insulted. They were too insulted to help us.
8. We didn't return that.. She was very upset. She was too upset to return that.
9. We didn't describe it well. We were very excited We were too excited to describe it well
10. I didn't prepare for it at all. I was very annoyed I was too annoyed to prepare for it at all.
11. She didn't speak about it. She was very ashamed. She was too ashamed to speak about it.
12. They didn't keep it up. They were Very tired by that time it up They were too tired by that time to keep
13. He didn't send for them He was very discreet He was too discreet to send for them.
14. We didn't bring it up at the meeting We were very depressed. At the meeting. We were too depressed to bring it up
15. They didn't begin the work. They were very Afraid. They were too afraid to begin the work
16. I didn't turn the offer down. I was very interested I was too interested to turn the offer down.

# 122. FINAL PREPOSITIONS (1) / CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

- S1. Whom is Mary talking to?  
 S2. She's talking to her cousin.  
 S1. What's she talking about?  
 S2. She's talking about her new job.

## Conversation B

- S1. What are Tom and Fred arguing about?  
 S2. They're arguing about politics.  
 S1. What's Tom objecting to?  
 S2. He's objecting to some of Fred's statements.

## Conversation C

- S1. What part of the lesson did you have trouble with?  
 S2. I had trouble with several parts.  
 S1. Whom did you explain Your problems to?  
 S2. I explained them to Mr. Taylor.

## Conversation D

- S1. What does Tom devote his spare time to.  
 S2. He devotes most of it to his hobbies.  
 S1. What does he concentrate on mostly?  
 S2. On photography, I think.

## Conversation E

- S1. Whom does that Woman remind you of?  
 S2. Is it somebody I work with?  
 S1. No. Somebody you're very friendly with.  
 S2. Now I know. You mean Mary Wilson.

## Exercise 1

He benefited from that.  
 They'll concentrate on that.  
 I should insist on that.  
 She contributes to that.  
 He can succeed in that.  
 I suffered from that.  
 They must believe in that.  
 She's prepared for that.  
 I recovered from that.  
 They'll object to that.  
 John can comment on that.  
 I wondered about that.  
 She must consent to that.

What did he benefit from?  
 What will they concentrate on?  
 What should you insist on?  
 What does she contribute to?  
 What can he succeed in?  
 What did you suffer from?  
 What must they believe in?  
 What's she prepared for?  
 What did you recover from?  
 What will they object to?  
 What can he comment on?  
 What did you wonder about?  
 What must she consent to?

They've qualified for that.  
 He'll worry about that.  
 They're quarreling over that.

What have they qualified for?  
 What will he worry about?  
 What are they quarreling over?

### Exercise 2

- 1 Has she been invited?
- 2 Weren't you convinced?
- 3 Will they be respected?
4. Couldn't he be assured?
- 5 Must you be prepared?
- 6 Was he convicted?
- 7 Haven't you been pleased?
- 8 Should she be rewarded?
- 9 Are they committed?
- 10 Will you be opposed?
11. Was he reprimanded?
12. Are they appreciated
13. Has Mary been devoted
14. Should I be ashamed
15. Must be acquainted?
16. Could they be accused?

- What's she been invited to?  
 What weren't you convinced of  
 What will they be respected for?  
 What couldn't he be assured of?  
 What must you be prepared for?  
 What was he convicted of?  
 What haven't you been pleased with?  
 What should she be rewarded for  
 What are they committed to?  
 What will you be opposed to  
 What was he reprimanded for?  
 What are they appreciated for?  
 What has been Mary devoted to  
 What Should I be ashamed of?  
 What Must be acquainted with?  
 What Could they be accused?

## 123 FINAL PREPOSITIONS (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. What did they complain about?
- S2. They complained about all the noise.

- S1. Whom did you refer them to?  
S2. I referred them to the manager.

#### Conversation B

- S1. What are you upset about?  
S2. About the things you said.  
S1. Is it something I should apologize for?  
S2. It certainly is.

#### Conversation C

- S1. Whom did you get the information from?  
S2. From my friend Robert.  
S1. Is he a person you can rely on to be accurate?  
S2. That's something I'm very sure of

#### Conversation D

- S1. Whom were you quarreling with?  
S2. I was quarreling with another student  
S1. What were you quarreling with him about?  
S2. About the coming election.

#### Conversation E

- S1. Whom did 'Mary disagree with?  
S2. She disagreed with Mr. Black.  
S1. What did she disagree with him on?  
S2. On the subject of foreign relations.

#### Exercise 1

1. It detracted.
2. It must correspond.
3. It provides.
4. It'll agree.
5. It has to conform.
6. It was combined.
7. It's interfering.
8. It should contribute.
9. It'll contrast.
10. It applies.
11. It's conflicted.
12. It differed.
13. It must correlate.
14. It'll relate.
15. It all depends.
16. It can compensate.

- What did it detract from?  
What must it correspond to?  
What does it provide for?  
What will it agree with?  
What does it have to conform to?  
What was it combined with?  
What's it interfering with?  
What should it contribute to?  
What will it contrast with?  
What does it apply to?  
What has it conflicted with?  
What did it differ from?  
What must it correlate with?  
What will it relate to?  
What does it all depend on?  
What can it compensate for?

#### Exercise 2

1. He'll apologize to them.
2. He'll apologize for that.
3. She quarreled with him.
4. They quarreled about that.

- Whom will he apologize to?  
What will he apologize for?  
Whom did she quarrel with?  
What did they quarrel about.

5. He can apply to them.
6. He can apply for that.
7. They agree with her.
8. They agree on that.
9. He's arguing with them.
10. He's arguing about that.
11. She can complain to him.
12. She can complain about that.
13. They spoke to him.
14. They spoke about that.
15. He lied to her.
16. He lied about that.

- Whom can he apply to?
- What can he apply for?
- Whom do they agree with?
- What do they agree on?
- Who's he arguing with?
- What's he arguing about?
- Whom can she complain to?
- What can she complain about?
- Whom did they speak to?
- What did they speak about?
- Whom did he lie to?
- What did he lie about?

## 124. VERB + PREPOSITIONS / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. Were you quarreling With John about Something?  
 S2. No. We were just talking about the political situation.  
 S1. Does John's opinion differ greatly from yours?  
 S2. Not much. We agree on almost everything.

### Conversation B

- S1. Are you worrying about something?

S2. Yes. My job is interfering with my studies.

S1. Why do you insist on studying and working at the same time?

S2. I want to finish school, but I also need money.

### Conversation C

S1. Have you inquired about their reasons for staying?

S2. No, because I don't think they would confide in me.

S1. If you associate with them more, maybe they will.

S2. Possibly, but I doubt it.

### Conversation D

S1. Are you going to comment on the new regulation?

S2. Yes. I think everyone will benefit from my comments.

S1. Do you object to the regulation or approve of it?

S2. Actually, I have mixed feelings about it.

### Conversation E

S1. Do you think Tom will succeed in solving the problem?

S2. It depends on a number of things.

S1. I suppose he'll rely on getting a little help from friends.

S2. Yes, and he'll probably confer with Professor Smith too.

### Exercise 1

1. They don't approve of him.

Why don't they approve of him?

2. I complained to them.

Why did you complain to them?

3. He can't compete with them.

Why can't he compete with them?

4. I've worried about him.

Why have you worried about him?

5. He didn't cooperate with me.

Why didn't he cooperate with you?

6. We disagreed with her.

Why did you disagree with her?

7. I have to listen to them.

Why do you have to listen to them?

8. He hasn't inquired about us.

Why hasn't he inquired about you?

9. She apologized to them.

Why did she apologize to them?

10. You should associate with her.

Why should I associate with her?

11. She confides in him.

Why does she confide in him?

12. He didn't converse with them.

Why didn't he converse with them?

### Exercise 2

Why did he worry about them?

Listen

Why did he listen to them?

Disagree

Why did he disagree with them?

Confide

Why did he confide in them?

Inquire

Why did he inquire about them?

Converse

Why did he converse with them?

Approve

Why did he approve of them?

Associate

Why did he associate with them?

Complain

Why did he complain to them?

Cooperate

Why did he cooperate with them?

Compete

Why did he compete with them?

Apologize

Why did he apologize to them?

**Worry****Why did he worry about them?****Exercise 3**

1. Did he benefit from that?
2. Will they concentrate on that.
3. Shouldn't you insist on that?
4. Doesn't she contribute to that?
5. Can he succeed in that?
6. Didn't you quarrel about that?
7. Have you applied for that?
8. Do they believe in that?
9. Won't he complain about that?
10. Have you prepared for that?
11. Should she apologize for that?
12. Don't you wonder about that?
13. Will they object to that?
14. Did she recover from that?

- Yes. He benefited from that.  
 Yes. They'll concentrate on that.  
 Yes, I should insist on that.  
 Yes. She contributes to that.  
 Yes. He can succeed in that.  
 Yes. We quarreled about that  
 Yes. I've applied for that.  
 Yes. They believe in that.  
 Yes. He'll complain about that  
 Yes. I've prepared for that  
 Yes. She should apologize for that.  
 Yes. I wonder about that.  
 Yes. They'll object to that.  
 Yes. She recovered from that

**Exercise 4**

1. They quarreled.
2. They objected.
3. They succeeded.
4. They apologized.
5. They benefited.
6. They wondered.
7. They insisted.
8. They applied.
9. They recovered.
10. They concentrated.
11. They contributed.
12. They prepared.
13. They complained.
14. They believed.

- They quarreled about that.  
 They objected to that.  
 They succeeded in that.  
 They apologized for that.  
 They benefited from that.  
 They wondered about that.  
 They insisted on that.  
 They applied for that.  
 They recovered from that.  
 They concentrated on that.  
 They contributed to that  
 They prepared for that.  
 They complained about that.  
 They believed in that.

**Exercise 5**

1. He referred to that.
2. I've provided for that.
3. They can't rely on that.
4. She disapproves of that.
5. You must hope for that.
6. They won't speak about that.
7. She's depending on that.
8. He lied about that.
9. You should invest in that.
10. I've specialized in that.
11. They didn't search for that.
12. I participated in that.
13. He's arguing about that.
14. She's disposed of that.

- Why did he refer to that?**  
 Why have you provided for that?  
 Why can't they rely on that?  
 Why does she disapprove of that?  
 Why must I hope for that?  
 Why won't they speak about that?  
 Why is she depending on that?
- Why did he lie about that?**  
 Why should I invest in that'?
- Why have you specialized in that?**  
 Why didn't they search for that?  
 Why did you participate in that?  
 Why is he arguing about that?  
 Why has she disposed of that?

**Exercise 6**

**Why did they speak about that?**

Rely	Why did they rely on that?
Invest	Why did they invest in that? - .
lie	Why did they lie about that?
depend	Why did they depend on that?
hope	Why did they hope for that?
Specialize	Why did they specialize in that?
disapprove	Why did they disapprove of that?
Argue	Why did they argue about that?
participate	Why did they participate in that?
dispose	Why did they dispose of that?
Search	Why did they search for that?
refer	Why did they refer to that?
provide	Why did they provide for that?

## **125. VERBS, OBJECT, PREPOSITION (1) / CONVERSATIONS**

### **Conversation A**

- S1. Did you explain our reasons for going to Mr. White?  
 S2. Yes. I explained everything to him.  
 S1. Did he question you about anything?  
 S2. No, but he reminded me of several things we should do.

### **Conversation B**

- S1. Why is Mary angry at you?  
 S2. Well, she blames me for the trouble she's having.  
 S1. But you warned her about the possibilities some time ago.  
 S2. Yes, and I emphasized that to her.

### **Conversation C**

- S1. Did you consult a lawyer about your tax problems?  
 S2. Yes, but he referred me to someone else.  
 S1. Whom did he refer you to?  
 S2. A lawyer who specializes in tax problems.

### **Conversation D**

- S1. I understand you assisted the girls with their article.

- S2. I just advised them in one or two matters.  
 S1. It was very kind of you to help them with it.  
 S2. Actually, I devoted very little time to it.

### Conversation E

- S1. What did Tom do with the money he won in the contest?  
 S2. He donated some of it to charity.  
 S1. Did he deposit any in his bank account?  
 S2. Yes, and he invested the rest in his brother's business.

### Exercise 1

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Did she consult him about that?  | Yes. She consulted him about that.  |
| 2. Can they accuse you of that?     | Yes. They can accuse me of that.    |
| 3. Has he thanked them for that?    | Yes. He's thanked them for that.    |
| 4. Do they suspect her of that?     | Yes. They suspect her of that.      |
| 5. Will he protect us from that?    | Yes. He'll protect us from that.    |
| 6. Can you question her about that? | Yes. I can question her about that. |
| 7. Did he pay the men for that?     | Yes. He paid the men for that.      |
| 8. Should we invite him to that.    | Yes. We should invite him to that.  |
| 9. Did he convince her of that?     | Yes. He convinced her of that.      |
| 10. Does she respect you for that?  | Yes. She respects me for that.      |
| 11. Will they punish him for that?  | Yes. They'll punish him for that.   |
| 12. Must she remind them of that?   | Yes. She must remind them of that.  |

### Exercise 2

- |                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| They reminded him.   | They reminded him of that.      |
| They invited him.    | They invited him to that.       |
| They consulted him.  | They consulted him about that.  |
| They paid him.       | They paid him for that.         |
| They encouraged him. | They encouraged him in that.    |
| They accused him.    | They accused him of that.       |
| They thanked him.    | They thanked him for that.      |
| They convinced him.  | They convinced him of that.     |
| They punished him.   | They punished him for that.     |
| They respected him.  | They respected him for that.    |
| They protected him.  | They protected him from that.   |
| They questioned him. | They questioned him about that. |

### Exercise 3

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Can you increase it to that?    | Yes, I can increase it to that.      |
| 2. Will he identify it as that?    | Yes, I'll identify it as that.       |
| 3. Did you deduct it from that?    | Yes. I deducted it from that.        |
| 4. Can they omit it from that?     | Yes, they can omit it from that.     |
| 5. Has she invested it in that?    | Yes. she invested it in that?        |
| 6. Can be replace it with that?    | Yes. It can replace it with that.    |
| 7. Should We add it to that?       | Yes. You should add it to that.      |
| 8. Do they derive it from that?    | Yes. they derive it from that.       |
| 9. Is he combining it with that?   | Yes, He's combining it with that.    |
| 10. Has Mary related it to that?   | Yes. Mary has related it to that.    |
| 11. Will they donate it to that?   | Yes. They'll donate it to that.      |
| 12. Can we accompany it with that? | Yes, you can accompany it With that. |
| 13. Did she exchange it for that?  | Yes. She exchanged it for that.      |
| 14. Will they confine it to that?  | Yes. They'll confine it to that.     |

#### Exercise 4

We exchanged it.  
 We omitted it.  
 We donated it.  
 We identified it.  
 We increased it.  
 We confined it.  
 We deducted it.  
 We accompanied it.  
 We invested it.  
 We related it.  
 We replaced it.  
 We derived it.  
 We combined it.  
 We added it.

We exchanged it for that.  
 We omitted it from that.  
 We donated it to that.  
 We identified it as that.  
 We increased it to that.  
 We confined it to that.  
 We deducted it from that.  
 We accompanied it with that.  
 We invested it in that.  
 We related it to that.  
 We replaced it with that.  
 We derived it from that.  
 We combined it with that.  
 We added it to that.

#### Exercise 5

1. Will they blame you for that?
2. Did he notify them of that?
3. Can she provide him with that?
4. Do you envy him for that?
5. Did they tease her about that?
6. Can he supply you with that?
7. Does he admire them for that?
8. Can they direct him to that?
9. Will he excuse them from that?
10. Has she warned you about that?
11. Did he compensate you for that?
12. Did they force him into that?
13. Will she forgive him for that?

Yes. They'll blame me for that.  
 Yes. He notified them of that.  
 Yes. She can provide him with that.  
 Yes. I envy him for that.  
 Yes. They teased her about that.  
 Yes. He can supply me with that.  
 Yes. He admires them for that.  
 Yes. They can direct him to that.  
 Yes. He'll excuse them from that.  
 Yes. She's warned me about that.  
 Yes. He compensated me for that.  
 Yes. They forced him into that.  
 Yes. She'll forgive him for that.

#### Exercise 6

He warned them.  
 He notified them.  
 He forced them.  
 He blamed them.  
 He forgave them.  
 He provided them.  
 He envied them.  
 He teased them.  
 He excused them.  
 He warned them.  
 He compensated them.  
 He supplied them.  
 He directed them.

He warned them about that.  
 He notified them of that.  
 He forced them into that.  
 He blamed them for that.  
 He forgave them for that.  
 He provided them with that.  
 He envied them for that.  
 He teased them about that.  
 He excused them from that.  
 He warned them about that.  
 He compensated them for that.  
 He supplied them with that.  
 He directed them to that.

## 126. VERBS, OBJECT, PREPOSITION (2) / CONVERSATION DRILL

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. I saw them about that yesterday.  
 S2. Did they (A) you \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
 S1. Well, they (B) it. ,  
 S2. I suppose that was to be expected.

<p>(A)</p> <p>blame.....for          warn..... About          advise..... of          encourage..... in          remind..... of          question... about          pay..... for          assist ... with</p>	<p>(B)</p> <p>complained about          worried about          commented On          inquired about          referred to          spoke about          consented to          argued about</p>
---	---

### Conversation Drill B

- S1. He's going to see them tomorrow.  
 S2. Do you think he'll (A) them \_\_\_\_\_ that?  
 S1. He certainly ought to \_\_\_\_\_ (B) it \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
 S2. At any rate, he has to do something.

<p>(A)</p> <p>consult..... About          threaten.....With          caution..... About          furnish.....with          excuse.....from          provide..... with          trust.....with          advise.....of</p>	<p>(B)</p> <p>explain..... to          suggest.....to          emphasize..... to          divide.....among          require.....of          share.....with          offer..... to          conceal.....from</p>
--	---



2. She's often rude, isn't she?
3. They won't be patient, will they?
4. You've been angry, haven't you?
5. He was antagonistic, wasn't he?
6. I haven't been courteous, have I?
7. She used to be hostile, didn't she?
8. They're always loyal, aren't they?
9. You'll be friendly, won't you?
10. John was good, wasn't he?
11. You shouldn't be jealous, should you?
12. He isn't very intimate, is he?
13. She won't be envious, will she?
14. They were considerate, weren't they?"?
15. He wouldn't be cruel, would he?
16. They're all proud, aren't they?
17. She was always resentful, wasn't she?
18. He's been quite truthful, hasn't he?
19. They won't be critical, will they?

- Yes. She's often rude to the man.  
 No. They won't be patient with the man.  
 Yes. I've been angry with the man.  
 Yes. He was antagonistic toward the man.  
 No. You haven't been courteous to the man.  
 Yes. She used to be hostile toward the man.  
 Yes. They're always loyal to the man.  
 Yes. I'll be friendly to the man.  
 Yes. John was good to the man.  
 No. I shouldn't be jealous of the man.  
 No. He isn't very intimate with the man.  
 No. She won't be envious of the man.  
 Yes. They were considerate of the man.  
 No. He wouldn't be cruel to the man.  
 Yes. They're all proud of the man.  
 Yes. She was always resentful of the man.  
 Yes. He's been quite truthful with the man.  
 No. They won't be critical of the man.

## Exercise 2

1. Wasn't he optimistic?
2. Are they all proficient?
3. Have you been aware?
4. Won't she be fearful?
5. Is he really contemptuous?
6. Haven't you been pessimistic?
7. Are they all innocent?
8. Will some be intolerant?
9. Were you impatient?
10. Wasn't the boy sorry?
11. Can't they be responsible?
12. Should the man be earnest?
13. Were the men intent?
14. Must you be skillful?
15. Wasn't she upset?
16. Aren't you all envious?

- Yes. He was optimistic about that.  
 Yes. They're all proficient in that.  
 Yes. I've been aware of that.  
 Yes. She'll be fearful of that.  
 Yes. He's really contemptuous of that.  
 Yes. I've been pessimistic about that.  
 Yes. They're all innocent of that.  
 Yes. Some will be intolerant of that.  
 Yes. I was impatient about that.  
 Yes. The boy was sorry about that.  
 Yes. They can be responsible for that.  
 Yes. The man should be earnest about that.  
 Yes. The men were intent on that.  
 Yes. I must be skillful at that.  
 Yes. She was upset over that.  
 Yes. We're all envious of that.

## 128. ADJECTIVES + PREPOSITION (2) / CONVERSATION DRILLS

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. What did the men say about the new secretary?  
 S2. Apparently, she's (A) working hard.  
 S1. In your opinion, is she (B) the things she must do?  
 S2. I would certainly say she is.

(A)  
 capable of  
 fond of  
 not afraid of  
 desirous of  
 intent on  
 not resentful of  
 amenable to  
 not critical of

(B)  
 skillful at  
 proficient in  
 suitable for  
 efficient in  
 careful about  
 adequate for  
 aware of  
 familiar with

### Conversation Drill B

- S1. What's your opinion of our new president?  
 S2. I like him because he's (A) other people.  
 S1. He's certainly (B) everyone.  
 S2. Obviously, he's a fine person for the job.

(A)  
 always considerate of  
 never critical of  
 always kind to  
 never rude to  
 always patient with  
 never envious of  
 always respectful of  
 never hostile toward  
 always courteous to  
 never unfair to

(B)  
 polite to  
 gentle with  
 friendly toward  
 cooperative with  
 acceptable to  
 thoughtful of  
 popular with  
 truthful with  
 trustful of  
 generous with

## 129. PARTICIPLE + PREPOSITION / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. What sports are you interested in?  
 S2. Well, I get quite excited about football.  
 S1. Do you get absorbed in games on TV, as my brother does?  
 S2. I'm afraid I do. Almost every weekend.

### Conversation B

- S1. Is something the matter?  
 S2. Well, I'm concerned about my job.  
 S1. Is it related to all the recent changes?  
 S2. Yes. I'm having trouble getting adjusted to my new duties.

### Conversation C

- S1. Are you accustomed to the climate here yet?  
 S2. Not really. I get tired of the constant rain.  
 S1. You certainly can't be blamed for that.  
 S2. I'll really be glad when the spring comes.

### Conversation D

- S1. Are you acquainted with that man over there?  
 S2. Yes. I'm associated with him in my work.  
 S1. I enjoyed talking to him very much.  
 S2. I'm not surprised at that. He's very charming.

### Conversation E

- S1. Did you get involved in the argument at the meeting?  
 S2. Yes. I didn't want to be accused of not having an opinion.  
 S1. I got very annoyed over several things that Harold said.  
 S2. To tell the truth, I was very disappointed in him.

### Exercise 1

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Will they be tired of that?          | Yes. They'll be tired of that.          |
| 2. Aren't you accustomed to that?       | Yes. I'm accustomed to that.            |
| 3. Should we be satisfied with that?    | Yes. You should be satisfied with that. |
| 4. Hasn't he been reminded of that?     | Yes. He's been reminded of that.        |
| 5. Must she be concerned about that?    | Yes. She must be concerned about that.  |
| 6. Haven't you been influenced by that? | Yes. I've been influenced by that.      |
| 7. Can they be blamed for that?         | Yes. They can be blamed for that.       |
| 8. Wasn't she notified of that?         | Yes. She was notified of that.          |
| 9. Will they be excited about that?     | Yes. They'll be excited about that.     |

10. Should he be involved in that?
11. Were they deprived of that?
12. Aren't you interested in that?
13. Will she be impressed by that?
14. Should I be offended by that?
15. Weren't you prepared for that?
16. Are they displeased with that?

Yes. He should be involved in that.  
 Yes. They were deprived of that.  
 Yes. I'm interested in that.  
 Yes. She'll be impressed by that.  
 Yes. You should be offended by that.  
 Yes. I was prepared for that.  
 Yes. They're displeased with that.

### Exercise 2

1. Will they be tired?
2. Aren't you accustomed?
3. Should we be satisfied?
4. Hasn't he been reminded?
5. Must she be concerned?
6. Haven't you been influenced?
7. Can they be blamed?
8. Wasn't she notified?
9. Will they be excited?
10. Should he be involved?
11. Were they deprived?
12. Aren't you interested?
13. Will she be impressed?
14. Should I be offended?
15. Weren't you prepared?
16. Are they displeased?

Why will they be tired of that?  
 Why aren't you accustomed to that?  
 Why should we be satisfied with that?  
 Why hasn't he been reminded of that?  
 Why must she be concerned about that?  
 Why haven't you been influenced by that?  
 Why can they be blamed for that?  
 Why wasn't she notified of that?  
 Why will they be excited about that?  
 Why should he be involved in that?  
 Why were they deprived of that?  
 Why aren't you interested in that?  
 Why will she be impressed by that?  
 Why should I be offended by that?  
 Why weren't you prepared for that?  
 Why are they displeased with that?

### Exercise 3

1. They'll be indebted to the man.
2. Wasn't he devoted to the man?
3. I've been influenced by the man.
4. We're all accustomed to the man.
5. He shouldn't be offended by the man.
6. No one was acquainted with the man.
7. They're amazed at the man.
8. You must be concerned about the man.
9. We won't be disappointed in the man.
10. She used to be interested in the man.
11. Everyone is disgusted with the man.
12. I had to be associated with the man.
13. You shouldn't be displeased with the man.
14. Weren't they insulted by the man?
15. You mustn't be ashamed of the man.
16. She's been provoked with the man.

Why will they be indebted to him?  
 Why wasn't he devoted to him?  
 Why have you been influenced by him?  
 Why are you all accustomed to him?  
 Why shouldn't he be offended by him?  
 Why wasn't anyone acquainted with him?  
 Why are they amazed at him?  
 Why must I be concerned about him?  
 Why won't you be disappointed in him?  
 Why did she use to be interested in him?  
 Why is everyone disgusted with him?  
 Why did you have to be associated with him?  
 Why shouldn't I be displeased with him?  
 Why were they insulted by him?  
 Why mustn't I be ashamed of him?  
 Why has she been provoked with him?

### Exercise 4

1. They'll be indebted.
2. Wasn't he devoted?
3. I've been influenced.
4. We're all accustomed.
5. He shouldn't be offended.
6. No one was acquainted.

They'll be indebted to the man.  
 Wasn't he devoted to the man?  
 I've been influenced by the man.  
 We're all accustomed to the man.  
 He shouldn't be offended by the man.  
 No one was acquainted with the man.

7. Are they related?
8. You mustn't be concerned.
9. We won't be disappointed.
10. She used be interested.
11. Everyone is disgusted.
12. I had to be associated
13. Don't be displeased.
14. Weren't they insulted?
15. You shouldn't be ashamed.
16. She's been provoked.

- Are they related to the man?
- You mustn't be concerned about the man
- We won't be disappointed in the man.
- She used to be interested in the man
- Everyone is disgusted with the man.
- I had to be associated with the man.
- Don't be displeased man
- Weren't they insulted by man?
- You shouldn't be ashamed of the man
- She's been provoked with the man.

## 130. WORD FORMS (1) /CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

S1. Tom seemed to become nervous when he noticed the time.

S2. He spoke nervously too, I thought.

S1. I noticed he made a quick departure afterwards.

S2. Yes. He did leave rather quickly, didn't he?

### Conversation B

S1. Is the director a well-educated man?

S2. Yes. He has a good education.

S1. Is he a very efficient person on the job?

S2. Yes, he is. He always seems to do things efficiently.

### Conversation C

S1. Was the man angry?

S2. Yes. He shouted at us very angrily.

S1. Were people calm about it or not?

S2. Most of us took it quite calmly.

### Conversation D

S1. Helen is a calm person.

S2. I've noticed she always speaks calmly.

S1. She also seems sensible about things.

S2. Yes. She always handles things sensibly, in my opinion.

### Conversation E

S1. Mr. White looked anxious, don't you think?

S2. Yes. He was pacing the floor anxiously when I saw him.

S1. Is he always so emotional about making speeches?

S2. Yes. He gets very involved emotionally.

### Exercise 1

1. He made rapid movements.

He made movements rapidly.

2. He used the correct expression.

He used the expression correctly.

3. He made a sudden comment.

He made a comment suddenly.

4. He asked respectful questions.

He asked questions respectfully.

5. He made precise gestures.

He made gestures precisely.

6. He wrote very careful reports.

He wrote reports very carefully.

7. He made a dramatic statement.

He made a statement dramatically.

8. He expressed his Sincere emotions.

He expressed his emotions sincerely.

9. He told extremely humorous jokes.

He told jokes extremely humorously.

10. He wrote frequent descriptions.

He wrote descriptions frequently.

11. He told amusing stories.

He told stories amusingly.

12. He gave us quite accurate information.

He gave us information quite accurately.

13. He told her his honest Opinion.

He told her his opinion honestly.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 14. He made several hasty calls.        | He made several calls hastily.         |
| 15. He demanded an immediate apology.   | He demanded an apology immediately     |
| 16. He asked us rather clever questions | He asked us questions rather cleverly. |

### Exercise 2

- |                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 She's very modest.               | She speaks very modestly.           |
| 2. They were resentful.            | They spoke resentfully.             |
| 3. You haven't been nervous.       | You haven't spoken nervously.       |
| 4. Everyone will be considerate.   | Everyone will speak considerately.  |
| 5. We won't be skeptical.          | We won't speak skeptically.         |
| 6. She was just being fair.        | She was just speaking fairly.       |
| 7. You should be brave.            | You should speak bravely.           |
| 8. We have to be practical.        | We have to speak practically.       |
| 9. I'm always sympathetic.         | I always speak sympathetically      |
| 10. John is being very quiet.      | John is speaking very quietly.      |
| 11. They could have been polite.   | They could have spoken politely.    |
| 12. You must be interesting.       | You must speak interestingly.       |
| 13. Please try to be sensible.     | Please try to speak sensibly.       |
| 14. I should have been suspicious. | I should have spoken suspiciously   |
| 15. She wasn't really critical.    | She didn't really speak critically. |
| 16. He used to be enthusiastic.    | He used to speak enthusiastically.  |

# 131. WORD FORMS (2) / CONVERSATIONS

---

## Conversation A

- S1. Does Peter always speak rapidly?  
 S2. Usually, but not when he makes speeches.  
 S1. He's a good speaker, and his pronunciation is excellent.  
 S2. He does pronounce words well, doesn't he?

## Conversation B

- S1. Was the president completely satisfied with the results?  
 S2. Yes, he was. He expressed complete satisfaction.  
 S1. Did he announce the results of our work formally?  
 S2. Yes, he did. He made a formal announcement.

## Conversation C

- S1. Did you consider everything impartially?  
 S2. Yes. I tried to give everything very impartial consideration.  
 S1. You treated the matter cautiously, I see.  
 S2. Well, it definitely called for cautious treatment.

## Conversation D

- S1. Did the chairman make a recommendation to oppose changes?  
 S2. Yes, and he recommended opposition to the new proposal  
 S1. Was there any criticism of the proposal?  
 S2. Yes. Some people criticized it and proposed further study.

## Conversation E

- S1. The boys behaved badly and deserved punishment.  
 S2. After the party, their parents punished them for their bad behavior.  
 S1. Did they apologize for their rude remarks?  
 S2. Yes. They made an apology for having spoken so rudely.

## Exercise 1 / Line A1 /

Does Peter always speak rapidly?

work  
 carefully  
 usually  
 write  
 accurately

Does Peter always work rapidly?  
 Does Peter always work carefully?  
 Does Peter usually work carefully?  
 Does Peter usually write carefully?  
 Does Peter usually write accurately?

## Exercise 2 / Lines A1 and A3 /

Peter is a rapid speaker.

worker

Peter is a rapid worker.

careful  
the boys  
good writers  
accurate

Peter is a careful worker.  
The boys are careful workers.  
The boys are good writers.  
The boys are accurate writers. .

### Exercise 3 / Line B4 /

He made a formal announcement.

Recommendation  
Immediate  
Suggestion  
Cautious  
Reference

He made a formal recommendation.  
He made an immediate recommendation.  
He made an immediate suggestion.  
He made a cautious suggestion.  
He made a cautious reference.

### Exercise 4/ Line C3 /

You treated the matter with caution.

Tact  
Handled  
Care  
Discussed

You treated the matter with tact.  
You handled the matter with tact.  
You handled the matter with care.  
You discussed the matter with care.

### Exercise 5 / Line C4 /

It definitely called for cautious treatment.

Tactful  
Handling  
Careful  
Discussion

It definitely called for tactful treatment.  
It definitely called for tactful handling.  
It definitely called for careful handling.  
It definitely called for careful discussion.

### Exercise 6

1. They're rapid translators.
2. He's a dramatic speaker.
3. She's a careful listener.
4. We're loyal followers.
5. You two are steady workers.
6. They're cautious planners.
7. I'm a terrible speller.
8. You're humorous speakers.
9. You're an accurate writer.
10. You're both wise shoppers.
11. She's a regular helper.
12. I'm a clumsy dancer.
13. They're energetic teachers.
14. We're attentive listeners.
15. You're a sincere speaker.
16. He's an efficient supervisor.

They translate rapidly.  
He speaks dramatically.  
She listens carefully.  
We follow loyally.  
You two work steadily.  
They plan cautiously.  
I spell terribly.  
You speak humorously.  
You write accurately.  
You both shop wisely.  
She helps regularly.  
I dance clumsily.  
They teach energetically.  
We listen attentively  
You speak sincerely.  
He supervises efficiently.

### Exercise 7

1. They'll speak considerately.
2. I won't speak skeptically.

They'll be considerate  
I won't be skeptical.

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 3. She speaks very modestly.           | She's very modest.           |
| 4. She was just speaking fairly.       | She was just being fair.     |
| 5. They spoke resentfully.             | They were resentful.         |
| 6. You haven't spoken nervously.       | You haven't been nervous.    |
| 7. Someone must speak bravely.         | Someone must be brave.       |
| 8. We have to speak practically.       | We have to be practical.     |
| 9. I always speak sympathetically.     | I'm always sympathetic.      |
| 10. John is speaking very quietly.     | John is being very quiet.    |
| 11. They could have spoken politely.   | They could have been polite. |
| 12. You should speak humorously.       | You should be humorous.      |
| 13. Please try to speak sensibly.      | Please try to be sensible.   |
| 14. They've spoken suspiciously.       | They've been suspicious.     |
| 15. She didn't speak critically.       | She wasn't critical.         |
| 16. He used to speak enthusiastically. | He used to be enthusiastic.  |

### Exercise 8

- |                         |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. He announced it.     | His announcement interested people.  |
| 2. We considered it.    | Our consideration interested people. |
| 3. I recommended it.    | My recommendation interested people. |
| 4. They opposed it.     | Their opposition interested people.  |
| 5. She criticized it.   | Her criticism interested people.     |
| 6. We proposed it.      | Our proposal interested people.      |
| 7. They explained it.   | Their explanation interested people. |
| 8. I described it.      | My description interested people.    |
| 9. He improved it.      | His improvement interested people.   |
| 10. They discovered it. | Their discovery interested people.   |
| 11. She discussed it.   | Her discussion interested people.    |
| 12. I examined it.      | My examination interested people.    |
| 13. They suspected it.  | Their suspicion interested people.   |
| 14. He defended it.     | His defense interested people.       |
| 15. We denied it.       | Our denial interested people.        |
| 16. They predicted it.  | Their prediction interested people.  |

### Exercise 9

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. He relied on them.        | His reliance on them was important.       |
| 2. He prepared for that.     | His preparation for that was important.   |
| 3. He invested in that.      | His investment in that was important.     |
| 4. He competed with them.    | His competition with them was important.  |
| 5. He protested about that.  | His protest about that was important.     |
| 6. He succeeded in that.     | His success in that was important.        |
| 7. He provided for that.     | His provision for that was important.     |
| 8. He replied to them.       | His reply to them was important.          |
| 9. He participated in that.  | His participation in that was important.  |
| 10. He cooperated with them. | His cooperation with them was important.  |
| 11. He recovered from that.  | His recovery from that was important.     |
| 12. He persisted in that.    | His persistence in that was important.    |
| 13. He depended on them.     | His dependence on them was important.     |
| 14. He referred to that.     | His referral to that was important.       |
| 15. He disagreed with them.  | His disagreement with them was important. |
| 16. He speculated on that.   | His speculation on that was important.    |

## 132. WORD FORMS (3) /CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation A

- S1. I tried to instruct John how to get there.  
 S2. Did he understand your instructions?  
 S1. Well, I described every place along the way in detail.  
 S2. Then I'm sure your description made everything clear.

### Conversation B

- S1. Did you see the demonstration of that new product?  
 S2. Yes, but it was demonstrated in a different building.  
 S1. Did the quick change in plans confuse people?  
 S2. Fortunately, there seemed to be very little confusion.

### Conversation C

- S1. Robert decided not to say anything about his good luck.  
 S2. I think he made a wise decision. Don't you?  
 S1. Definitely I admire him for it too  
 S2. Without question, he deserves a great deal of admiration.

### Conversation D

- S1. We just recently agreed on a course of action.  
 S2. What brought about this agreement?  
 S1. We investigated and then concluded it was necessary.  
 S2. I came to the same conclusion after some investigation.

### Conversation E

- S1. My friend selected everything he needed very quickly.  
 S2. But his selections were quite good, I thought.  
 S1. How could he choose things so quickly?  
 S2. I don't know, but his choices were all very good.

### Exercise 1

- |                          |                                    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. They admired him.     | Their admiration was apparent.     |
| 2. We suspected them.    | Our suspicion was apparent.        |
| 3. She trusted us.       | Her trust was apparent.            |
| 4. They encouraged him.  | Their encouragement was apparent.  |
| 5. We guided them.       | Our guidance was apparent.         |
| 6. He persuaded us.      | His persuasion was apparent.       |
| 7. They recommended her. | Their recommendation was apparent. |
| 8. She supported them.   | Her support was apparent.          |
| 9. He advised them.      | His advice was apparent.           |
| 10. We offended him.     | Our offense was apparent           |
| 11. She flattered them.  | Her flattery was apparent.         |
| 12. I reassured him.     | My reassurance was apparent.       |
| 13. He instructed her.   | His instruction was apparent.      |

14. You deceived them.
15. They respected him.
16. We assisted her.

Your deception was apparent.  
 Their respect was apparent.  
 Our assistance was apparent.

### Exercise 2

1. They approved of that.
2. They depended on him.
3. They contributed to that.
4. They applied for that.
5. They apologized to him.
6. They insisted on that.
7. They complained to him.
8. They inquired about that.
9. They argued with him.
10. They objected to that.
11. They associated with him.
12. They intervened in that.
13. They adjusted to that.
14. They qualified for that.
15. They believed in that.
16. They quarreled with him.

I mentioned their approval of that.  
 I mentioned their dependence on him.  
 I mentioned their contribution to that.  
 I mentioned their application for that.  
 I mentioned their apology to him.  
 I mentioned their insistence on that.  
 I mentioned their complaint to him.  
 I mentioned their inquiry about that.  
 I mentioned their argument with him.  
 I mentioned their objection to that.  
 I mentioned their association with him.  
 I mentioned their intervention in that.  
 I mentioned their adjustment to that.  
 I mentioned their qualification for that.  
 I mentioned their belief in that.  
 I mentioned their quarrel with him.

## 133. WORD FORMS (4) / CONVERSATIONS

---

Conversation A

- S1. Didn't Alice seem anxious about taking the examination?  
 S2. Yes. She seemed to have a great deal of anxiety about it.  
 S1. But she's the most intelligent student in the class!  
 S2. I guess intelligence and anxiety aren't directly related.

#### Conversation B

- S1. Fred seems to be a very sincere 2nd ambitious person.  
 S2. Yes. I admire his sincerity and ambition a great deal.  
 S1. I suspect some people are very envious of his success.  
 S2. Well, I'm sure successful people get quite accustomed to envy.

#### Conversation C

- S1. Did Bill's humorous comments amuse everyone?  
 S2. Yes, they did. He's very clever, isn't he?  
 S1. Yes, and he has a good sense of humor.  
 S2. I think everyone enjoyed his cleverness and humor.

#### Conversation D

- S1. We're very grateful for all your generosity.  
 S2. You're very kind to express your gratitude.  
 S1. Well, you were very generous, and we wanted to thank you.  
 S2. And I have appreciated your kindness.

#### Conversation E

- S1. Did your friends give you an accurate description of the event?  
 S2. Yes. In fact, their accuracy was very impressive.  
 S1. They're always very competent and reliable in things like that.  
 S2. Competence and reliability. are important qualities in our work.

#### Exercise 1

- |                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. He's a wealthy person.       | His wealth helps him a lot.       |
| 2. He's a strong person.        | His strength helps him a lot.     |
| 3. He's a neat person.          | His neatness helps him a lot.     |
| 4. He's a wise person.          | His wisdom helps him a lot.       |
| 5. He's an energetic person.    | His energy helps him a lot.       |
| 6. He's an intelligent person.  | His intelligence helps him a lot. |
| 7. He's a courageous person.    | His courage helps him a lot.      |
| 8. He's an important person.    | His importance helps him a lot.   |
| 9. He's a practical person.     | His practicality helps him a lot. |
| 10. He's a brilliant person.    | His brilliance helps him a lot.   |
| 11. He's a lucky person.        | His luck helps him a lot.         |
| 12. He's an ingenious person.   | His ingenuity helps him a lot.    |
| 13. He's a mature person.       | His maturity helps him a lot.     |
| 14. He's an ambitious person.   | His ambition helps him a lot.     |
| 15. He's an able person.        | His ability helps him a lot.      |
| 16. He's an independent person. | His independence helps him a lot. |

#### Exercise 2

1. We're aware of her honesty.      She's honest with us.

- |                                       |                              |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 2. We're aware of your confidence.    | You're confident in us.      |
| 3. We're aware of his patience.       | He's patient with us.        |
| 4. We're aware of their fear.         | They're afraid of us.        |
| 5. We're aware of his antagonism.     | He's antagonistic toward us. |
| 6. We're aware of her gratitude.      | She's grateful to us.        |
| 7. We're aware of your strictness.    | You're strict with us.       |
| 8. We're aware of their tolerance.    | They're tolerant of us.      |
| 9. We're aware of her politeness.     | She's polite to us.          |
| 10. We're aware of his cooperation.   | He's cooperative with us.    |
| 11. We're aware of their criticism.   | They're critical of us.      |
| 12. We're aware of her rudeness.      | She's rude to us.            |
| 13. We're aware of his competition.   | He's competitive with us.    |
| 14. We're aware of their helpfulness. | They're helpful to us.       |
| 15. We're aware of her loyalty.       | She's loyal to us.           |
| 16. We're aware of his neglect.       | He's neglectful of us.       |

### Exercise 3

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. She was aware of that.         | We noticed her awareness of that.       |
| 2. She was absent from that.      | We noticed her absence from that.       |
| 3. She was ready for that.        | We noticed her -readiness for that.     |
| 4. She was familiar with that.    | We noticed her familiarity with that.   |
| 5. She was optimistic about that. | We noticed her optimism about that.     |
| 6. She was anxious about that.    | We noticed her anxiety about that.      |
| 7. She was skillful at that.      | We noticed her skill at that.           |
| 8. She was grateful for that.     | We noticed her gratitude for that.      |
| 9. She was doubtful about that.   | We noticed her doubt about that.        |
| 10. She was intolerant of that.   | We noticed her intolerance of that.     |
| 11. She was proficient in that.   | We noticed her proficiency in that.     |
| 12. She was sorry about that.     | We noticed her sorrow about that.       |
| 13. She was responsible for that. | We noticed her responsibility for that. |
| 14. She was successful in that.   | We noticed her success in that.         |

### Exercise 4

- |                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. She's dependent on them.   | Her dependence on them is obvious.    |
| 2. She's considerate of them. | Her consideration of them is obvious. |
| 3. She's intimate with them.  | Her intimacy with them is obvious.    |
| 4. She's courteous to them.   | Her courtesy to them is obvious.      |
| 5. She's angry at them.       | Her anger at them is obvious.         |
| 6. She's suspicious of them.  | Her suspicion of them is obvious.     |
| 7. She's loyal to them.       | Her loyalty to them is obvious.       |
| 8. She's jealous of them .    | Her jealousy of them is obvious.      |
| 9. She's hostile toward them. | Her hostility toward them is obvious. |
| 10. She's cruel to them.      | Her cruelty to them is obvious.       |
| 11. She's envious of them.    | Her envy of them is obvious.          |
| 12. She's generous with them. | Her generosity with them is obvious.  |

### Exercise 5

- |                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. They're very ignorant. | People notice their ignorance. |
| 2. She's very proud.      | People notice her pride.       |
| 3. We're very formal.     | People notice our formality.   |
| 4. He's very weak.        | People notice his weakness.    |
| 5. You're very fluent.    | People notice your fluency.    |
| 6. She's very innocent.   | People notice her innocence.   |

7. I'm very clumsy.
8. He's very stupid.
9. You're very friendly.
10. She's very popular.
11. I'm very frank.
12. They're very brave.
13. You're very obedient.
14. We're very punctual.
15. He's very violent.
16. She's very appreciative.

- People notice my clumsiness.  
 People notice his stupidity.  
 People notice your friendliness.  
 People notice her popularity.  
 People notice my frankness.  
 People notice their bravery.  
 People notice your obedience.  
 People notice our punctuality.  
 People notice his violence.  
 People notice her appreciation

### Exercise 6

1. That'll be simple.
2. That was reckless.
3. That's been precise.
4. That can be consistent.
5. That should be influential.
6. That's advantageous.
7. That's been probable.
8. That was appropriate.
9. That used to be beneficial.
10. That's suitable.
11. That's been possible.
12. That was foolish.
13. That ought to be sufficient.
14. That'll be reliable.
15. That's been effective.
16. That would be advisable.

- They'll see the simplicity of it.  
 They saw the recklessness of it.  
 They've seen the precision of it.  
 They can see the consistency of it.  
 They should see the influence of it.  
 They see the advantage of it.  
 They've seen the probability of it.  
 They saw the appropriateness of it.  
 They used to see the benefit of it.  
 They see the suitability of it.  
 They've seen the possibility of it.  
 They saw the foolishness of it.  
 They ought to see the sufficiency of it.  
 They'll see the reliability of it .  
 They've seen the effectiveness of it.  
 They would see the advisability of it.

## 134. WORD FORMS (5) / CONVERSATIONS

---

### Conversation Drill A

- S1. What did you say about the man?  
 S2. I said the man (A) that.  
 S1. Yes, and his (B) caused problems.  
 S2. I guess no one expected that.

(A)  
 discovered  
 invented  
 refused  
 explained  
 criticized  
 defended  
 improved

(B)  
 discovery  
 invention  
 refusal  
 explanation  
 criticism  
 defense  
 improvement

discussed

discussion

**Conversation Drill B**

**S1. Do you know Mary very well?**

**S2. Yes, I do. I know that she's very (A)**

**S1. Some people aren't aware of her (B)**

**S2. I've been aware of it for some time.**

**(A)**

**anxious  
accurate  
intelligent  
efficient  
humorous  
clever  
sincere  
modest**

**(B)**

**anxiety  
accuracy  
intelligence  
efficiency  
humor  
cleverness  
sincerity  
modesty**

### Exercise 2

Haven't you heard what she'll write ?  
 Haven't you heard why she couldn't write?  
 Haven't you heard how often she writes?  
 Haven't you heard where she's writing?  
 Haven't you heard what she's written?  
 Haven't you heard how much she wrote?  
 Haven't you heard what she has to write?  
 Haven't you heard when she should write?  
 Haven't you heard whom she used to write to?  
 Haven't you heard what she's going to write?  
 Haven't you heard how much she must write?  
 Haven't you heard how long she was writing?  
 Haven't you heard when she usually writes?  
 Haven't you heard which one she'd better write?  
 Haven't you heard where she's been writing?  
 Haven't you heard what she's written?  
 Haven't you heard which one she's going to write to?  
 Haven't you heard what she plans to write?  
 Haven't you heard how much she wrote?

No. What will she write?  
 No. Why couldn't she write?  
 No. How often does she write?  
 No. Where's she writing?  
 No. What's she written?  
 No. How much did she write?  
 No. What does she have to write?  
 No. When should she write?  
 No. Whom did she use to write to?  
 No. What's she going to write?  
 No. How much must she write ?  
 No. How long was she writing?  
 No. When does she usually write?  
 No. Which one had she better write?  
 No. Where's she been Writing?  
 No. What's she written?  
 No. Which one is she going to write?  
 No. What does she plan to write?  
 No. How much did she write?

### Exercise 3

1. Where will he be?
2. Why did she leave?
3. Who's that man?
4. When did they return?
5. Where's John going?
6. Where does she live?
7. When did they arrive?
8. When are they leaving?
9. Why was she absent?
10. Why didn't she return?
11. Why did Mary buy it?
12. Who's that tall man?
13. Who's doing the work?
14. Who wrote this paper?
15. Whom did they invite?
16. Whom should I speak to?

I don't know where he'll be.  
 I don't know why she left.  
 I don't know who that man is.  
 I don't know when they returned.  
 I don't know where John is going.  
 I don't know where she lives.  
 I don't know when they arrived.  
 I don't know when they are leaving.  
 I don't know why she was absent.  
 I don't know why she didn't return.  
 I don't know why Mary bought it.  
 I don't know who that tall man is.  
 I don't know who's doing the work.  
 I don't know who wrote this paper.  
 I don't know whom they invited.  
 I don't know whom you should speak to.

### Exercise 4

1. Whose house is that?
2. Whose book did he use?
3. What happened to him?
4. What's he talking about?
5. What does the word mean?
6. What do you call that?
7. What did she ask them?
8. What country is he from?
9. What cities did he visit?
10. Which one is Brown's?
11. Which one does he want?
12. Which does John prefer?
13. How does it work?
14. How old is Mr. Brown?
15. How much did it cost?

Please tell us whose house that is.  
 Please tell us whose book he used.  
 Please tell us what happened to him.  
 Please tell us what he's talking about.  
 Please tell us what the word means.  
 Please tell us what you call that.  
 Please tell us what she asked them.  
 Please tell us what country he is from.  
 Please tell us what cities he visited.  
 Please tell us which one is Brown's.  
 Please tell us which one he wants.  
 Please tell us which John prefers.  
 Please tell us how it works.  
 Please tell us how old Mr. Brown is.  
 Please tell us how much it cost.

**16. How do you say this?**

**Please tell us how you say this.**